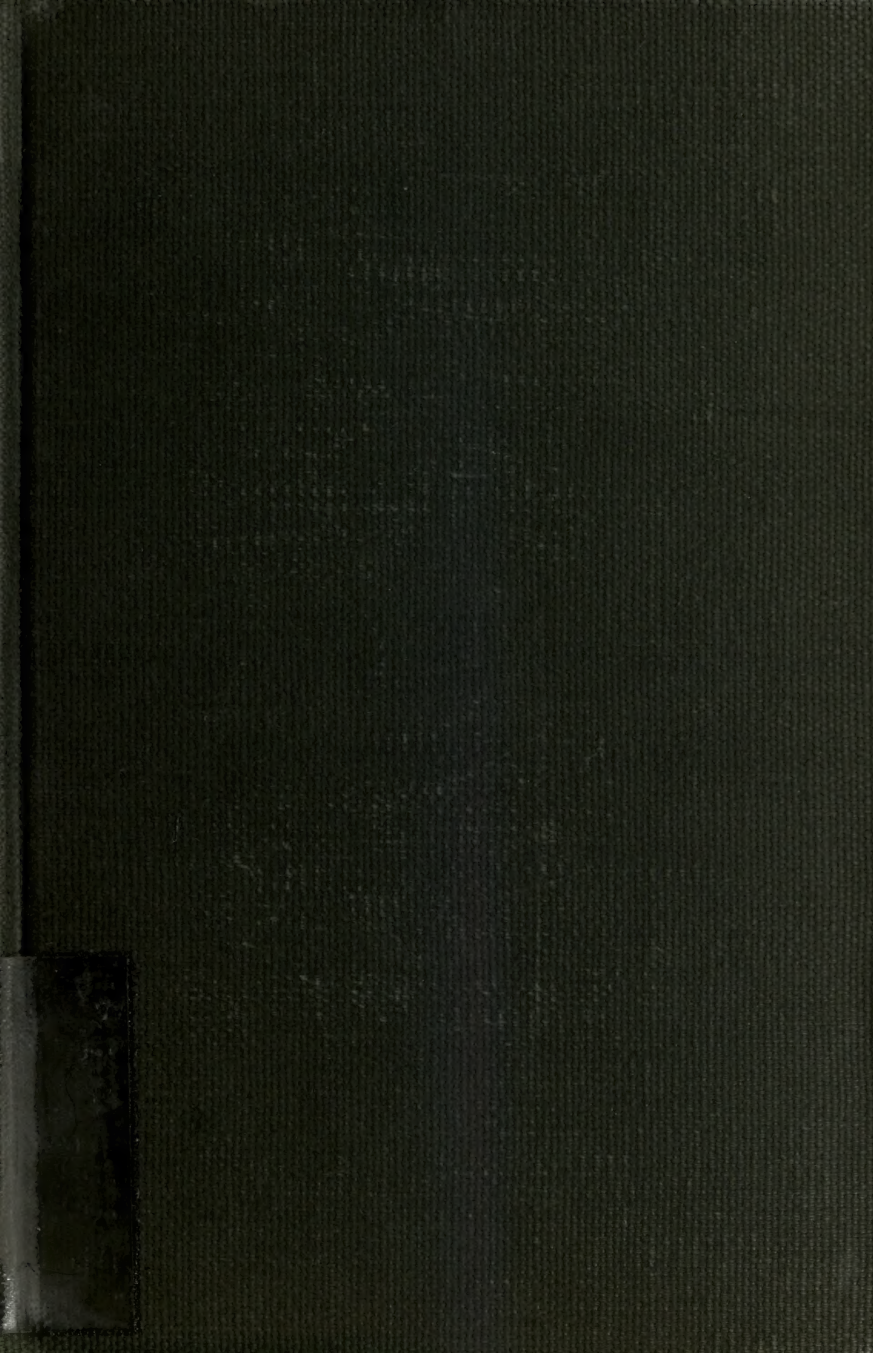
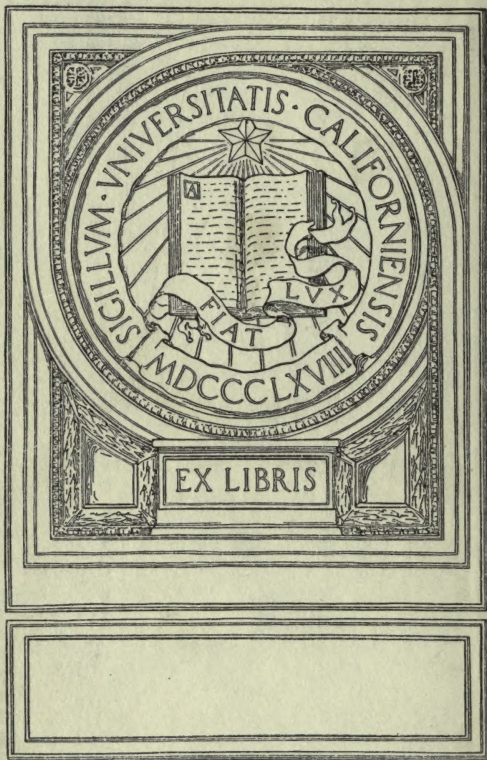








Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2007 with funding from
Microsoft Corporation

A CONCISE GRAMMAR
OF THE
RUSSIAN LANGUAGE

green

A CONCISE GRAMMAR

OF THE

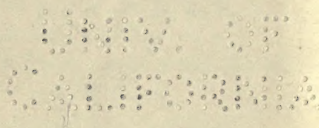
RUSSIAN LANGUAGE

Russian Grammar.

BY

LEONARD A. MAGNUS, LL.B.

*Editor and translator of the "Armament of Igor,"
"Russian Folk Tales," &c.*



LONDON

JOHN MURRAY, ALBEMARLE STREET, W.

1916

SERVATION
Y ADDED
GINAL TO BE
AINED

27 1994

~~835~~
~~M/99~~

LONDON:

PRINTED BY WILLIAM CLOWES AND SONS, LIMITED,
DUKE STREET, STAMFORD STREET, S.E., AND GREAT WINDMILL STREET, W.

TO THE
LIBRARY OF THE
BRITISH MUSEUM

1891

PG 2111
M3
1916
MAIN

CONTENTS.



PAGE

Preface	xvii
Introduction	xix
Alphabet	xxi
Russian Script and Italic	xxiii
Specimen of Handwriting	xxiv
§ 1. The Use and Value of the Letters	1
§ 2. The Vowels—	
(1) Hard and Soft Vowels	2
(2) а and я	2
(3) э, е and ё	3
(4) и, и, i, y	3
(5) о and ө	4
(6) у and ю	5
(7) ъ and ѣ	5
§ 3. The Consonants—Voiced and Unvoiced	6
§ 4. General Observations on the Consonants	6
§ 5. The Hard and Soft Consonants.—Preliminary	8
(1) The Labials п, б, м, в, ф, θ	8
(2) The Dentals т, д, н	9
(3) The Gutturals к, г, х	10
(4) The Sibilants and Compound Conso- nants с, з, ш, ж, щ, ц, ч	11
(5) The Liquids л and р	13
§ 6. Conglomerated Consonants when Final	14
§ 7. Transliteration into Russian	14
§ 8. Russian Diphthongs	15
§ 9. The Change of е to ө	16

ACCIDENCE.

§ 10. The Parts of Speech	19
-------------------------------------	----

THE NOUN.

§ 11. Preliminary Observations.—The Genders	20
§ 12. The Declensions	21

	PAGE
§ 13. The Cases	22
§ 14. The Numbers	23
§ 15. Hard and Soft Nouns	24
§ 16. The First Declension—Masculines	25
§ 17. The First Declension—Neuters	26
§ 18. The Second Declension in а and я	28
§ 19. The Third Declension in и and мя—Mascu- lines of the Third Declension—путь	30
§ 20. Feminines of the Third Declension	30
§ 21. Neuters in мя of the Third Declension	32
§ 22. Remains of Older Forms in the Third Declension—	
(1) мать, дочь	32
(2) дитя	33
§ 23. Discussion of the Nouns	33
§ 24. Remarks on the Masculine Nouns of the First Declension—	
(1) Genitive and locative singular in “у” The “u” declension	34
(2) Plurals in -ья	35
(3) Plurals in -а	36
(4) Genitive plural in -ъ	37
(5) Nominative singular in -инъ	38
(6) Irregular formations	39
§ 25. Accentuation of the Masculine Nouns of the First Declension	39
§ 26. Remarks on the Neuter Nouns of the First Declension—	
(1) Genitive plural in -ъ and -ей	41
(2) Neuters in -ие and feminines in -ия	42
(3) Mixed masculine and neuter declension —nouns in -ище, -ко and others	43
(4) Plurals in -ья	43
(5) Irregular forms—	
(а) Obsolete, néбо, чýдо, -ята	44
(β) Duals	45

	PAGE
§ 27. Accentuation of the Neuter Nouns of the First Declension	45
§ 28. Remarks on the Second Declension—	
(1) Genitive plural in -ь and -ей	46
(2) Contraction of -ою, -ею to -оѣ, -еѣ	47
(3) Masculine nouns in second declension	47
(4) Nouns in -іа	47
§ 29. Accentuation of Second Declension	47
§ 30. Remarks on the Third Declension	49
§ 31. Accentuation of the Third Declension	49
§ 32. The “Euphonic” Vowels о, е and ё—	
I. Extrusion of ѣ and ъ when unaccented	50
II. Insertion of о and е for euphony	52
III. What heavy final consonants are allowed	54
IV. Remarks on the third declension	55

THE ADJECTIVE.

§ 33. Preliminary Observations—	
(1) The syntactical importance of the adjective	55
(2) The use of possessive and descriptive adjectives	56
(3) No distinction of gender in the plural	56
(4) The predicative adjective	56
(5) The determinative and simple adjective	56
(6) The accentuation of the adjective	58
(7) No third declension adjectives	58
(8) The unnecessary grammarians' spellings in the determinatives	58
(9) The substantival use of adjectives	58
§ 34. The Simple, Possessive and Descriptive Adjectives—	
(1) Examples of simple adjectives	58
(2) Formation of possessive adjectives and examples	59
(3) Formation of descriptive adjectives	61

	PAGE
§ 35. The Determinative Adjectives—	
(1) The scheme and formation	62
(2) Examples	64
§ 36. The Formation of the Predicatives—	
(1) Where no corresponding predicative exists	68
(2) Where no corresponding determinative exists	68
(3) Possessives	68
(4) Instances of accentuation of predicatives	68
§ 37. The Comparison of Adjectives.—Formation—	
(1) Comparative and superlative, how formed	70
(2) The superlative	70
(3) Substitutes for the superlative	71
§ 38. The Comparison of Adjectives.—Rules—	
I. Use of the uninflected form	72
II. The four simple inflected superlatives	73
III. Adjectives with no determinative comparative	73
IV. Use of prefix <i>но</i> with indeclinable comparative	73
V. Translation of “than”	74
§ 39. The Comparison of Adjectives.—Examples—	
I. The regular form <i>-ѣе</i> , <i>-ѣйшіи</i> , and accentuation	74
II. The shorter form <i>-ѣе</i> , <i>-ѣйші</i>	74
III. Comparison with words from different roots	77

THE PRONOUN.

§ 40. (1) Preliminary observations	77
(2) Table of Russian pronouns and adverbs	78-9

§ 41.	Examples of the Pronouns—	
I.	The interrogative pronouns . . .	80
	Remarks on кой, чей, который, сколько	81
II.	The relatives кто, который . . .	81
III.	The demonstratives тотъ, этотъ, оный, сей ; remarks on the use of them .	82
IV.	The universals каждый, весь, всякій .	83
V.	The personal pronouns and possessives	84
	(1) Use of свой and себя, ся . . .	85
	(2) Use of егó, etc., with prepositions	85
	(3) Instrumental fem. sing. in -ой	86
	(4) When personal pronouns are used	86
VI.	The indefinite pronouns	86
VII.	The negative pronouns. The double negative in Russian	87
VIII.	The pronouns of identity, and самъ and самый	87
IX.	The pronouns of difference, другой, иной, прочие	88

THE VERB.

§ 42.	(1) Table of Russian Verbs	89
	(2) Preliminary observations—	
	(i) The parts of the Russian verb.	90
	(ii) The deficiencies of the Russian verb and the aspects	91
	(iii) How the parts are formed	92
	(iv) Verbs original and derivative	92
§ 43.	The Russian Infinitive — Consonantal and Vocalic	93
§ 44.	The forms derived from the Infinitive	94
§ 45.	The formations from the 1st person sing. Present	96
§ 46.	The laws of the accentuation of the verbs	96

	PAGE
§ 47. Paradigms of желать and верить . . .	98
§ 48. The Four Conjugations.—Some Phonetic Rules	99
§ 49. The First Conjugation. The Present forms—	
I. Guttural roots, infinitives in -чь . . .	100
II. Nasal roots, infinitives in -ять; verbal noun and past part. pass. in т . . .	101
III. Sibilant roots, infinitives in -сти́, -сть . . .	103
IV. Liquid roots. (1) Infinitives in -ереть, -елеть; verbal noun and past part. pass. in т	104
(2) Infinitives in -ороть, -олоть . . .	104
V. Dental roots, infinitives in -сти́, -сть . . .	105
идти́, честь, състь	106
Accentuation of past tense . . .	107
VI. Roots in в, жить, плыть, слыть . . .	107
VII. Consonantal roots with suffixal а in infinitive	108
§ 50. The Second Conjugation in-нуть. Preliminary.	
I. "Instantaneous" verbs and their accentuation	109
II. "Inchoative" verbs and their accentuation	110
III. Examples of conjugation	111
§ 51. The Third Conjugation.—Preliminary . . .	112
§ 52. The Original Verbs of the Third Conjugation.	
I. Those in which termination is directly to root—	
(1) Liquid roots, олоть, ороть	112
(2) Vocalic roots (а) in "а" знать, сійать . . .	113
(β) Roots in и, бить, etc., past part. pass. in т . . .	113
(γ) Roots in у, дуть, past part. pass. in т . . .	113
(δ) Roots in ѣ, смѣть	113
(ε) Verbs in ыть and пѣть, past part. pass. in т	114
II. Verbs with suffixal infinitive in -ать, -ять, and accentuation	115
слать, стлать, дыхать, etc.	116

	PAGE
§ 53. Derivative Verbs of the Third Conjugation—	
(1) From nouns in -ать, -ять	116
(2) Inceptives in -ѣть	116
Accentuation of them	117
(3) I. Derivatives in -овать, and accentua- tion. Derivatives in -ировать, and accentuation	117
II. Original verbs in -овать, -евать	118
(4) Iteratives in -ать, -ять	119
(5) Iteratives in -ывать, -ивать	119
давать, ставить, знать	120
§ 54. The Fourth Conjugation. Preliminary —	
Infin. in -ѣть, -ить	120
§ 55. The Fourth Conjugation. Original Verbs—	
I. In -ать, -ять, гнать, стоять, спать	121
II. In -ѣть, -ать, and accentuation	122
Past tense in -ѣлъ	123
хотѣть, бѣжать	123
Accentuation of original verbs in -ить	124
§ 56. The Fourth Conjugation. Derivative Verbs.	
Accentuation and origins	125
§ 57. Anomalous Verbs—	
I. Mixed conjugations. The same root throughout. ревъѣть, хотѣть, -дѣть, стать, посѣтитъ, обратитъ, -шибѣть	126
II. Using different roots. идти, быть (and its compounds), ѣхать	127
III. Obsolete forms. здать, verbs in “м,” вѣмъ, есмь, ѣсть, дати	128
§ 58. The Aspects of the Verbs. Preliminary	130
Perfective—Imperfective—Abstract—Itera- tive — Instantaneous — Causative — In- ceptive	131
Verbs having no perfective	132

	PAGE
§ 59. The Formation of the Aspects—	
I. (1) From original verbs	133
Monosyllabic roots. Those naturally	
perfective	133
Iteratives in -а́ть, -ва́ть	134
When compounded	134
-честь and -чита́ть	135
(2) Second conjugation in -нуть	135
The “instantaneous” aspect	135
(3) Third conjugation. Prepositions	
to form perfective	135
Iteratives in -ыва́ть, -а́ть	136
двѣ́гать, дви́гать, etc.	137
(4) Fourth conjugation. Original verbs	
in -и́ть, -ѣ́ть. Imperfective in -я́ть.	
Abstract forms in -а́ть, -я́ть, -и́ть.	137
When compounded, abstract is	
imperfective	138
Iterative forms in -а́ть, -я́ть	139
Iteratives in -ива́ть, -ыва́ть	140
II. The formation of perfective of derivative	
verbs	140
With prepositions	140
III. Aspects formed from a different root.	
Perfective and imperfective, concrete	
and abstract	141
IV. The aspects of compounded verbs in -и́ть,	
-я́ть, -а́ть, -нуть, -ыва́ть	142
V. Causatives and inceptives in -и́ть and -ѣ́ть	145
VI. По and за as forming depreciatory, or	
diminutive, and inceptive aspects	146
§ 60. Reflexive and Passive Verbs—другъ дру́га	147

THE NUMERALS.

PAGE

§ 61.	Preliminary	149
§ 62.	I. The numerals 1-10	150
	Declension of <i>о́ба</i>	152
	II. The numerals 11-90	152
III.	The numerals 100-1,000,000.— <i>сто</i>	153
	The compound numerals.— <i>ты́сяча</i>	154
IV.	Notes—	
	(1) Frequency	155
	(2) Distributives	155
	(3) Nought	155
	(4) Noun governed by last numeral	155
	(5) Decimals	156
	(6) Compound ordinals and examples	156
	(7) Declension of <i>два</i> with nouns— <i>дво́и</i> , etc.	157
	(8) Fractions— <i>полови́на</i> , <i>полтора́</i> ; <i>пол-</i> <i>compounds</i>	158
	(9) Dates— <i>го́дь</i> and <i>ле́то</i>	160
§ 63.	THE ADVERBS	160
§ 64.	THE PREPOSITIONS	161
§ 65.	THE CONJUNCTIONS	161
§ 66.	THE INTERJECTIONS	161

SYNTAX.

§ 67.	Preliminary—Concord—Order of Words— Predominance of Adjective	162
§ 68.	The Article	163
§ 69.	The Cases—	
	I. Nominative	163
	II. Vocative	164
	III. Accusative as object	164
	Special uses: duration	165

	PAGE
IV. Genitive	165
(i) Ownership — Possessive adjectives — Subjective genitive and objective always follows	166
(ii) Partitive	170
(iii) In impersonal sentences.	171
(iv) Replaced by dative	171
(v) After comparatives	172
(vi) Objective case	172
(vii) After certain adjectives and verbs	172
(viii) Dates	173
(ix) Partitive sense	173
(x) Descriptive	173
V. The Dative	174
VI. Instrumental	175
(1) Agent	175
(2) Means	175
(3) Predicative	176
(4) Manner	176
(5) Measurement	176
(6) Words of quality	177
(7) Time	177
(8) After certain verbs	177
VII. The Locative.	177
§ 70. Table of Prepositions and Particles	178-9
§ 71. The Prepositions and Particles.—Preliminary	180
§ 72. The Prepositions governing only the Accusative	181
§ 73 (1). The Prepositions governing only the Genitive	182
§ 73 (2). The Prepositions governing only the Dative	187
§ 74. The Prepositions governing only the Instrumental and между	188
§ 75. The Prepositions governing only the Locative	189
§ 76. The Prepositions подъ, предъ and за	189
§ 77. The Prepositions въ, о and на	193
§ 78. The Prepositions по and съ.	198
§ 79. The Verbal Prefixes воз, вы, пере, пре, разъ	201
§ 80. The Accentuation of Prepositions and Particles	204

§ 81. The Numerals—

I. The date, days, months, etc.	206
II. Age	208
III. Adjectives compounded with numerals	209
IV. The time of day	209
V. Fractions	210
VI. Russian money	212
VII. Frequencies	212
VIII. One cardinal now obsolete	213
IX. Cards	213

§ 82. The Pronouns—

I. Interrogative	214
II. Relative	214
III. Indefinite pronouns. Use of <i>он</i>	215
IV. The reciprocal pronouns	216
V. The negative pronouns	217

§ 83. The Russian Appellatives—

I. In conversation — <i>ВЫ, ТЫ, ба́рину</i> , patronymics.	218
II. Between masters and servants	220
III. Addressing meetings	221
IV. Titles	221
V. Addressing letters	223

§ 84. Interrogative sentences—*ли, развѣ*

§ 85. Negative sentences

§ 86. The Verb “to be,” omission of “copula”

§ 87. The Verb “to have”

§ 88. Special use of Infinitive

§ 89. The Gerundives and Participles—

I. The gerundives	232
II. The participles—past and present. -мый = -ble.	232

§ 90. Subordinate Clauses—

I. Temporal	234
II. Causal	235
III. Conditional	235
IV. Final. (1) Purpose. (2) Effect	237
V. Reported Speech	238

	PAGE
§ 91. The Imperative. Full forms	241
Adverbial, Preterite and Conditional uses— пошелъ	241
§ 92. Further illustrations of the Aspects	243
§ 93. The Auxiliaries	247
давно́, бѹду, ста́ну, бѹдо	247
то́лько что, быва́ло	248
бѣло, the future perfect	249
§ 94. The Impersonal Construction—	
I. Impersonal verbs	249
II. Translation of “one” (says)	250
III. Impersonal construction of active verbs	250
§ 95. Apocopated forms of some Verbs	250
§ 96. The Reflexive Verbs	251
Passives, Causatives, Deponents, “Middle” Voice	252
§ 97. Russian Relationships	253
Table of Kinship	258
Table of Affinity	259
ETYMOLOGY.—Preliminary.—Accentuation	260
§ 98. The Nouns—	
I. Foreign terminations in common use	260
II. Disused or dead suffixes	261
III. Patronymics	262
IV. Termination to denote the feminine	262
V. Abstract nouns	262
VI. Verbal nouns	263
VII. The agent or implement	264
VIII. Diminutives—	
(1) Masculines of first declension	265
(2) Neuters of first declension	265
(3) Feminines and masculines of second declension	266
IX. Augmentatives	267
X. Miscellaneous	267
§ 99. Adjectival Suffixes	268
§ 100. Verbal Formations	270

PREFACE.

THE Russian language is becoming daily of increasing importance, both commercially and literarily. It is used over nearly one-seventh of the world, from Petrograd to Vladivostók and in the other Slav States. The literature, popular and cultivated, technical and scientific, published in Russia, must claim the attention of students to the same degree as German has done in the past.

The greatest puzzle in Russian is the accentuation, which governs the pronunciation and inflection, and seems utterly arbitrary. To a large extent it can be scientifically and simply explained, and to this feature the author has devoted especial care.

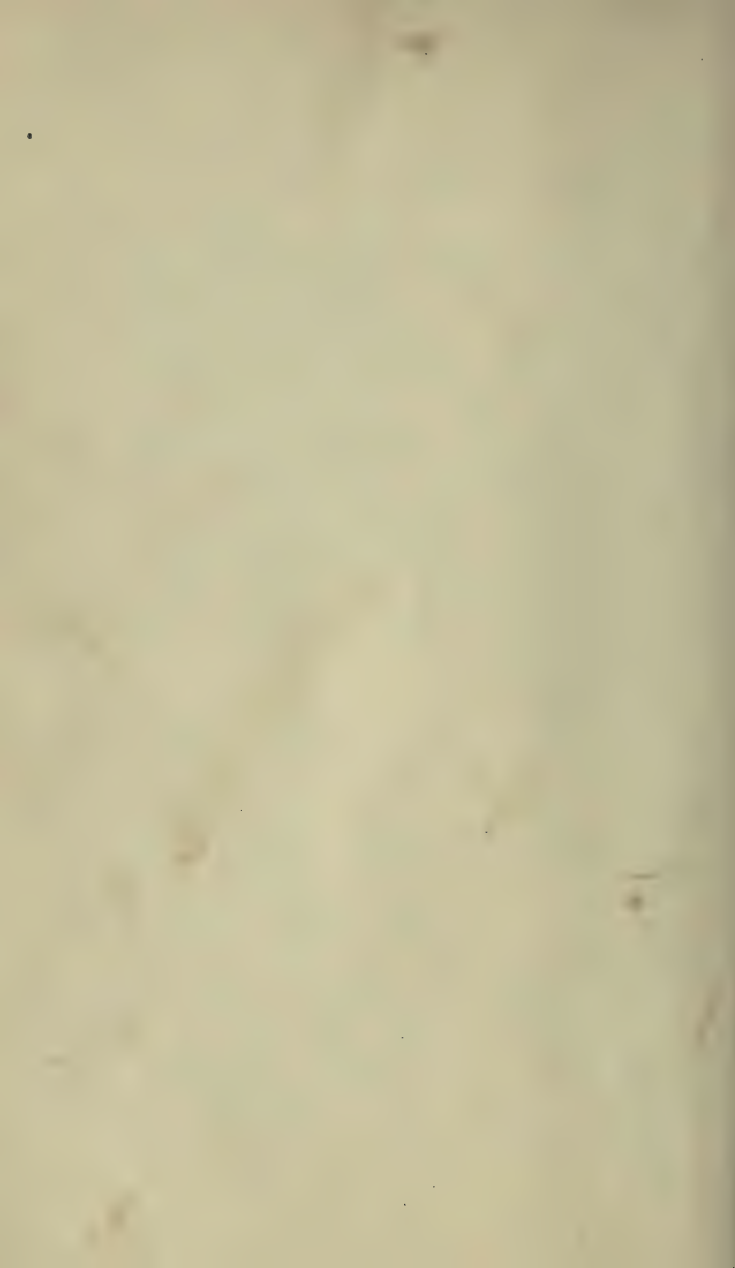
The difficulties of the language cannot be denied; but they have been accentuated by two accidents: first, that all grammars were constructed on a plan merely imitative of Latin; secondly, that they mostly came from Germany, and were framed in accordance with the requirements of the German mind.

It is with the ambition of writing a book on Russian grammar that shall translate Russian into English idiom, and shall proceed on lines more consonant with the genius of Slav speech, that this book has been attempted.

The author wishes to express his obligations to many friends, English and Russian, who have rendered him invaluable assistance, and, in particular, to Mr. Mark Sieff and Mr. J. H. G. Grattan; and to acknowledge his indebtedness to Berneker's Russian studies, and the essays of Professor Boyer (of the Sorbonne).

This grammar, whilst aiming at being practical, is based on historical and philological methods. Explanatory notes on apparent irregularities are added in smaller type, the principal rules being made prominent by italics or otherwise. This grammar should be used in conjunction with one of the progressive readers now being published in England.

L. A. M.



INTRODUCTION.

THE modern Russian language is spoken over the whole extent of the Russian Empire. It originated as the dialect of the Principality of Moscow and the Republic of Nówgorod, and thus at first embraced all the provinces or governments of Russia proper, except Volhynia, Podolia, Poltáva and Southern Russia (where a dialect called Little-Russian is spoken). In Minsk, Gródno and Vílna another dialect is spoken, called White-Russian.

Russian belongs to the Slavonic branch of the Aryan or Indo-European family of languages; other kindred tongues are Polish, Čech or Bohemian, Moravian, Serbian and Bulgarian.

The Slavonic peoples mostly belong to the Orthodox or Eastern Church. They received their alphabet, their civilisation and their ritual from Constantinople, and hence mostly use modernized or adapted forms of the Cyrillic alphabet, which was created by Saint Cyril and Saint Method in the ninth century on the basis of the Greek alphabet.

Those Slav peoples who belong to the Roman confession use the Latin or Roman alphabet, as we do;

but, to provide symbols for the many sounds, very numerous diacritical marks have had to be added, e.g. а, е, ё, ъ, ѓ, љ, њ, ѓ, љ, ѓ, etc. The Cyrillic alphabet was invented expressly for the Slavonic languages ; and, though the signs are at first strange, they express the sounds more accurately, and, in reality, aid the learner considerably.

The first task of the student of Russian is to familiarise himself with the alphabet, *both* printed and written, so that he may read and write it with ease and promptitude.

In English the vowels a, e, i, o, u have, since Shakespeare's time, been grotesquely diverted from their original value and the general Continental use. The reader must understand that in this Grammar a, e, i, o, u are used as in Italian or German : i.e. ah, cortège, pique, poke, rule ; except where specially stated otherwise.

THE RUSSIAN ALPHABET.

The Russian Alphabet consists of thirty-six letters. Of these there are twelve vowels, а, е, и, ѣ, у, о, у, ъ, ё, э, ю, я; twenty-one consonants, б, в, г, д, ж, з, к, л, м, н, п, р, с, т, ф, х, ц, ч, ш, щ, ѳ; one semi-vowel, ѱ (i *krátkøyi*); and two letters which have no sound-value of their own, ѵ, ѷ—they influence the softening or hardening of the consonant immediately preceding them.

Printed.		Italic.		Name.	Corresponding Value.	Trans- literation.
Caps.	Ord.	Caps.	Ord.			
А	а	А	а	a (às in <i>ah</i>)	a (<i>father</i>)	a
Б	б	В	б	be (like English <i>bay</i>)	b	b
В	в	В	в	ve (as in Eng. <i>vale</i>)	v	v
Г	г	Г	г	ge (like English <i>gay</i>)	g *	g
Д	д	Д	д	de (like English <i>day</i>)	d	d
Е	е	Е	е	ye (like English <i>yea</i>)	ye	e or ye
Ж	ж	Ж	ж	zhe (like French <i>jeai</i>)	{ ž (like s in leisure) }	ž
З	з	З	з	ze (like English <i>zay</i>)	z	z
И	и	И	и	i (like English 'e)	{ i (as in pique) }	i
Й	й	Й	й	и краткое (i <i>krátkøyi</i>)	{ y (as in yet) }	y
І	і	І	і	и съ точкой (i <i>stóčkoy</i>)	{ i (as in pique) }	i
К	к	К	к	ka (like English <i>kah</i>)	k	k
Л	л	Л	л	ell	l	l

* Always "hard" as in Give.

Printed.		Italic.		Name.	Corresponding Value.	Transliteration.
Caps.	Ord.	Caps.	Ord.			
M	m	<i>M</i>	<i>m</i>	em	m	m
H	h	<i>H</i>	<i>h</i>	en	n	n
O	o	<i>O</i>	<i>o</i>	o (as in <i>stock</i>)	o	o
П	p	<i>П</i>	<i>p</i>	pe (as in <i>pay</i>)	p	p
P	p	<i>P</i>	<i>p</i>	err (as in Scotch <i>air</i>)	r	r
C	c	<i>C</i>	<i>c</i>	ess	s	s
T	t	<i>T</i>	<i>m</i>	te (as in <i>tay</i>)	t	t
Y	y	<i>Y</i>	<i>y</i>	u (as in <i>rule</i>)	u	u
Ф	f	<i>Ф</i>	<i>ф</i>	eff	f	f
X	x	<i>X</i>	<i>x</i>	khah	{ch in <i>loch</i> or German <i>ch</i> }	kh
Ц	ц	<i>Ц</i>	<i>ц</i>	tse (as in <i>tsay</i>)	ts	ts
Ч	ч	<i>Ч</i>	<i>ч</i>	če (as in <i>chaste</i>)	English <i>ch</i>	č
Ш	ш	<i>Ш</i>	<i>ш</i>	ša (as in <i>shah</i>)	English <i>sh</i>	š
Щ	щ	<i>Щ</i>	<i>щ</i>	šča	{šč rapidly {combined*}}	šč
Ъ	ъ	<i>Ъ</i>	<i>ъ</i>	yerr (еръ)	mute	—
Ы	ы	<i>Ы</i>	<i>ы</i>	yerý (еры́)	{y like i in <i>swim</i> }	y
Ь	ь	<i>Ь</i>	<i>ь</i>	yerĩ (ерь)	mute	—
Ѣ	ѣ	<i>Ѣ</i>	<i>ѣ</i>	yatĩ (ятѣ)	{like Russian <i>e</i> }	ě
Э	э	<i>Э</i>	<i>э</i>	e (like English <i>ě</i>)	{like <i>ě</i> in <i>ell</i> }	e
Ю	ю	<i>Ю</i>	<i>ю</i>	yu (like English <i>yu</i>)	yu	yu
Я	я	<i>Я</i>	<i>я</i>	ya (like English <i>yah</i> !)	ya	ya
Ѧ	Ѧ	<i>Ѧ</i>	<i>Ѧ</i>	fitá	f	
Ѧ	Ѧ	<i>Ѧ</i>	<i>Ѧ</i>	ízitsa	like n	

* Sounded like shch in *freshcheese*.

RUSSIAN SCRIPT AND ITALIC.

Cursive.		Italic.		Cursive.		Italic.	
A	a	A	a	С	с	С	с
Б	б	Б	б	Т	т	Т	т
В	в	В	в	У	у	У	у
Г	г	Г	г	Ф	ф	Ф	ф
Д	д	Д	д	Х	х	Х	х
Е	е	Е	е	Ц	ц	Ц	ц
Ж	ж	Ж	ж	Ч	ч	Ч	ч
З	з	З	з	Ш	ш	Ш	ш
И	и	И	и	Щ	щ	Щ	щ
Й	й	Й	й	Ъ	ъ	Ъ	ъ
І	і	І	і	Ы	ы	Ы	ы
К	к	К	к	Ь	ь	Ь	ь
Л	л	Л	л	Ѧ	Ѧ	Ѧ	Ѧ
М	м	М	м	Ѣ	Ѣ	Ѣ	Ѣ
Н	н	Н	н	Ю	ю	Ю	ю
О	о	О	о	Я	я	Я	я
П	п	П	п	Ѧ	Ѧ	Ѧ	Ѧ
Р	р	Р	р	Ѧ	Ѧ	Ѧ	Ѧ

SPECIMEN OF HANDWRITING.

Въ минуту жизни трудную
 Тьснитесь-ль въ сердцахъ грусть
 Одну молитву чудную
 Твержу я наизусть

Есть сила благодатная
 Въ созвучьи словъ живыхъ
 И дышетъ непонятная
 Святая прелесть въ нихъ
 Съ души какъ бремя скатится
 Сомненья далеко
 И вкрится и плачется
 И такъ легко, легко

ITALIC.

Въ минуту жизни трудную
 Тьснитесь-ль въ сердцахъ грусть
 Одну молитву чудную
 Твержу я наизусть
 Есть сила благодатная
 Въ созвучьи словъ живыхъ
 И дышетъ непонятная
 Святая прелесть въ нихъ
 Съ души какъ бремя скатится
 Сомненья далеко
 И вкрится и плачется
 И такъ легко, легко.

(Термонтовъ.)

RUSSIAN GRAMMAR.

THE ALPHABET.

PARTICULAR attention is drawn to *б, г, д, н, ж, ш, з, ц, м, у*; letters which often occasion the learner difficulty. To distinguish *м* and *у* in loose writing, a line is often used above and below, e.g. *ṁ, ṁ̄*.

Remember in all transliterations *a, e, i, o, u* should be sounded as in *father, cortège* (or *été*, v. footnote, p. 3), *pique, Tom, rule*.

§ 1. THE USE AND VALUE OF THE LETTERS.

The Russian language is nearly phonetic, but has kept a number of letters that have lost their separate values, e.g. *и, ѣ, в, ѳ*; and further, like English, has a strong tonic accent, which tends to slur the preceding and following syllables.

e.g. *Wólverhampton, indúbitably, my lórd, láboratory, Súdäy, désultoriness.*

In such English words the vowels all become merged in the atonic vowel, phonetically written *ə* (e.g. *a* in "villa"), and in Russian a similar phenomenon obtains.

But the Russian alphabet, *with these reservations*, has symbols assigned to every separate sound, and thus is nearly phonetic.

The Russian tonic accent is very hard to acquire, and can only be learnt by practice. A few hints can be given here and there. *In this Grammar it is marked throughout*, as in all dictionaries.

§ 2. THE VOWELS.

(1) Russian has no less than fifteen symbols for vowels. They are partly survivals of an older stage of the language.

They are divided into "hard" and "soft," i.e. simple, or preceded by the consonant *y*. This distinction affects the grammar and pronunciation of every word, and the following table must be committed to memory:—

<i>Hard</i> :	а	э	ы	о	у	ъ
<i>Soft</i> :	я	е, ё	и, ъ	ё	ю	ь

(2) a *accented** is sounded like *a* in "father," but somewhat shorter.
Pronunciation of a and я. e.g. баба woman

a *unaccented* is sounded like *a* in "villa." e.g. баба.

The familiar phonetic symbol for this sound is *ə*, the *atonic* vowel. Thus баба is sounded "bábə."

Unaccented *a* is sounded like the Russian *e* after ж, ч, ш, щ. [v. § 5 (4).]

я *accented* is sounded *ya*. e.g. я I.

я *unaccented* is sounded *yě* or *yi* or *i*.

e.g. Баба-яга (Bábə-yigá), the name of the Russian witch; любить (lyúbit) they love.

In one instance я is sounded *a* in the reflexive suffix ся (sa). [v. § 41, V. (1).]

я (ya) also represents the Old Slav *nasal vowel* *ę* (sounded like French *in* in "brin"). This historical fact explains such verbal forms as жать, жму, жну, root žn, žh, and nouns in -мя, e.g. пламя, пламени flame. [v. § 21 and § 49, II.] Polish conserves the Old Slav nasals *o* and *e*, e.g. sędzić, Russian судить (súd'it') to judge.

* "Accented" means emphasised, stressed. There are no written accents in Russian, except in elementary grammars and texts.

(3) э is used in foreign words adapted to Russian, but in no pure Russian words except
 Pronunciation of э, е, ѣ. *этотъ* (étot) this. It is sounded like the French è in “trève,” or the English *ai* in “hair,” but shorter. It is only used in transliteration of foreign *e*-sounds.

e.g. Эмденъ Emden, поэтъ (po-ét) poet, Эпъ Aisne

е and ѣ now represent the same sound, namely *yě*. In older Russian ѣ had a separate value, varying between *yě* and *ya*.*

e.g. Екатерина (Yekaterín) Catherine
 ѣмъ (yem) I eat

е is used:—

(i) When it represents *ë* [v. § 2 (5) and § 9].

(ii) When it is inserted to avoid heavy consonants and represents ь [v. § 2 (7) and § 32]; e.g. весь, вся (veś, fsya) all.

When unaccented it becomes a faint *yě* or *i* sound.

e.g. поле (pólyě) field сине́е (sínyěyě) blue

The pronouns *о́днѣ* and *о́днѣ*, *о́нѣ* masc., *о́нѣ* fem. and neuter, are both sounded *о́днѣ*, *о́нѣ* (adní, aní).

(4) The sound-value of ы is best understood as a rapid combination of German *ü* with *i*,
 Pronunciation of ы and и. *üi*; or, it may be got by placing the tongue in the *u* position, the lips in the *i* position. *Roughly*, it may be produced by sounding the English word *bin* deep in the throat.

No word can ever begin with the vowel ы.

* The sound “ye” (е and ѣ) is open [yè] or close [yé] according as the following consonant is “hard” or “soft.”

и is the pure *i*-sound, produced with elongation of the lips, as in French or German.

і (и съ точкою = with a dot) is the same, but only used *before* other vowels (e.g. мнѣніе [mněnie] opinion), except in one word, міръ the world.

When и is used in diphthongs or reduced to the consonantal value of *y* in “yet,” it is written ѣ and called и краткое (и short).

e.g. стаѣ (stāi) flock

ѵ (ѵжица) is equivalent to и, and only used to represent the Greek *υ* in a few Church words.

Note.—міръ world, миръ peace, мѵро myrrh, сѣнодь synod, and Владѣміръ Vladímír (and similar names, e.g. Казѣміръ).

(5) о *accented* is sounded like the German short *o* in Pronunciation “Gott,” and can be imitated by *shortening* of о and ѐ. the English vowel-sound *au* (e.g. cough).

e.g. рогъ horn

о *unaccented* is sounded *a* or *ə*.

e.g. хорошó	(khærəšó)	fine
порá	(pará)	time
слóво	(slóvə)	word.

ѐ is sounded *yó*, i.e. *o* with a *yod*-sound. It *only occurs* in accented syllables, and *in writing is not distinguished* from *e*, except in elementary books. Rules are given in § 9 for the change from *e* to *ě*.

e.g. ружѐ	(ružó)	gun
несѐте	(nisyóte)	ye carry
жѐны	(žóny)	the wives
ѐлушка	(yóluškə)	fir-tree

(6) *y* is sounded like *u* in “rule” or “pull”; *ю* is sounded like *u* in “universe,” but of *y* and *ю*. shorter.

e.g. юбилéй (yubiléy) jubilee
несú (nisú) I carry

(7) *ъ* and *ь* are mute in modern Russian. The former indicates the hardness of a consonant; the latter the softness, i.e. the absence or presence of a *yod* element.

e.g. былъ (byl) he was вязъ (vyas) elm
быль (byl') a tale вязь (vyas') bond

But in older Russian *ъ* had a value something like the *u* in “nut,” and *ь* a soft short *i*-sound.

Hence the differences in conjugation and declension between родъ, рóда (родъ generation), and ротъ, рíа (ротъ mouth), терéть to rub, тры I rub.

This is because in all open syllables (i.e. ending in a vowel) *ъ* and *ь* became mute; in all closed syllables (i.e. ending in a consonant) *ъ* and *ь* disappeared when unaccented, or became *o* and *e* when accented. E.g. дѣнó, дѣнъ' (the bottom), now дно, донъ; рѣтъ', рѣта (the mouth), now ротъ, рта; дѣнь', дѣнiа (day), now день, дня [d'nyá].

Obviously then *ъ* and *ь* can only occur *medially* (in compounds) and *finally*.

Further, theoretically no Russian word ends in a consonant; the mute vowel is always added, even in foreign words.

e.g. Лондонъ London Брюссель Brussels

Latterly, there is a tendency to discard final *ъ*, when it is merely orthographical.

§ 3. THE CONSONANTS—VOICED AND UNVOICED.

The consonants must first be divided into *unvoiced* and *voiced* (e.g. in English *t* and *d*, *p* and *b*).

We then have:—

	<i>Labials.</i>	<i>Dentals.</i>	<i>Gutturals.</i>
Mutes unvoiced:	п	т	к
„ voiced:	б	д	г
Nasals:	м	н	—
Spirants unvoiced:	ф ө	—	х
„ voiced:	в	—	—

The remainder must be separately classed:—

	<i>Sibilants.</i>	<i>Compound consonants.</i>
Unvoiced:	с ш	ч ц, щ
Voiced:	з ж	дж —

Liquids: л and р.

§ 4. GENERAL OBSERVATIONS ON THE CONSONANTS.

(1) There is no nasal guttural in Russian, like the English *ng*.

e.g. жѣнка (*žón-ka*) little woman (нк as in *pancake*)

(2) When б, д, г, в, з, and ж are *final* consonants, they are sounded like п, т, к, ф, с, and ш.

e.g. рабъ	(rap)	slave
дѣдъ	(d'ět)	grandfather
рогъ	(rok)	horn
островъ	(óstrǫf)	island
ложь	(loš)	lie
розъ	(ros)	of the roses

(3) When in compounds **т** precedes **д**, the first **т** is assimilated to **д**.

e.g. **отд́ать** (ad-dát') to give up

(4) When in the same syllable **з** precedes **ж**, or **с** precedes **ш**, the combination is sounded like **жж**, and **шш**.

e.g. **пóзже** (požži) later
вы́сший (vyšši) highest

(5) **ф** is scarcely found in original Russian words; **о** is almost disused, and has the same phonetic value, just as *ph* in "phonetic" has the same sound as *f* in "fine."

(6) When **к** and **г** precede **т** in the same syllable, they are commonly sounded as **х** (kh).

e.g. **но́гтя** (nókhtya) of the nail
кто (khtǒ) who

(7) Other instances of assimilation (*these constitute rules*):—

бу́до	(búttə)	as if
сдѣ́лать	(zdělət')	to do
отъ за́ри	(adzarí)	from the dawn
про́сьба	(próz'bə)	request
сча́стье	(ščást'e)	happiness
изво́зчикъ	(izvóščik)	driver
что	(štǒ)	what
мы́гкий	(myákhki)	soft
ле́гче	(lékhče)	easier

Generally speaking the subsequent letter, voiced or unvoiced, attracts and assimilates the preceding.

(8) ч before н is sounded ш.

e.g. скýчно (skúšnə) weary

(9) All consonants are sounded, *except* д and т in -здн-, -стн-; л in солнце (sóntsi) sun; ль final after labials.

e.g. по́здний	(pózni)	late
вла́стный	(vlásny)	powerful
ру́бль	(rup')	rouble
мы́сль	(mýs')	thought

§ 5. THE "HARD" AND "SOFT" CONSONANTS.

Preliminary.

The vowels have already been divided into two sets *hard* and *soft*, i.e. plain and ioticised, viz. :—

<i>Hard:</i>	а	э	ы	о	у	ъ
<i>Soft:</i>	я	е ѣ	и і	ё	ю	ь

Some consonants can be combined with any of the vowels. *These consonants are either hard or soft according as the vowel following is hard or soft.*

Other consonants are *naturally* "hard" or "soft," and can *only* be used with certain vowels.

The strictest attention must be paid to these rules; as they explain the inflections, and dispose of most of the apparent exceptions.

(1) *The Labials.*

The labials п, б, м, в can *all* be either "hard" or "soft," and can be used with *any* of the vowels.

But note that л is inserted after п, б, м, and в in

all "soft" nominal forms and in all verbal forms before ю and е.

e.g.	ловѣть	(lavít')	to catch
	ловлю	(lavlyú)	catch
	торговать	(tərgəvát')	to trade
	торговля	(tərgóvlya)	trade

Otherwise п, б, м, ф, в are sounded like English p, b, m, f, v, *subject to the general remarks in § 4 (2).*

(2) *The Dentals.*

The dentals can be used with *any* of the vowels. But they modify their pronunciation, and are changed in derivatives and verbal forms into palatals when "soft."

т, д and н "hard" are sounded as in English.

ть and дь are sounded midway between t and ċ, something like the cockney "don't-yer know?" "did-you?"

нь is sounded *movillé* like Spanish ñ, French and Italian *gn*.

These sounds are here denoted *t'*, *d'* and *ń*.

Thus we have:—

Hard : та [тэ] ты то ту ть

Soft : тя те ти тѣ тю ть, sounded t'a, t'e, etc.

Soft derivatives : че чу

e.g.	платить	(plat'ít')	to pay
	плачу	(plačú)	I pay
	молотить	(mələt'ít')	to thrash
	молочу	(mələčú)	I thrash
	молотятъ	(mələt'it)	they thrash

Under identical conditions *д* changes to *ж*.

e.g.	стыдѣ́ться	(stydítsa)	to be ashamed
	сты́дятся	(stydyátsa)	they are ashamed
but	стыжѹ́сь	(styžús')	I am ashamed

Russian, however, has some Church Slavonic derivatives, in which under these same conditions *т* became *ш*, and *д*, *жд*.

e.g.	предѣ́	(přet)	before (preposition)
	пре́жде	(přéždi)	before (adverb)
	сла́д-кѣ́й	(slátki)	sweet, сла́ще (slášče) sweeter
	ро́дитъ	(rad'ít')	to bear, ро́ждать (raždál')

(3) *The Gutturals.*

The gutturals *к*, *г*, *х* are in Russian words *never* combined with *я*, *э*, *ы*, *ѣ*, *ю*, *ь*.

In Old Russian, before these vowels, they were regularly changed in *all* nominal and verbal inflections and in all derivatives to *ц* and *ч*, *ж* and *ш* or *с* respectively. In modern Russian these changes only take place in verbs and derivatives.

The series of hard and soft gutturals is as follows:—

Hard: ка ко ку кѣ

Soft: ке ки

Soft Derivatives: ча че чи чо or чѣ чу

ор ци цу

Similarly with *г* and *х*; but *г* changes to *ж*, and *х* to *ш*.

Thus: га ге ги го гу гѣ

Derivatives жа же жи жо or жѣ жу жѣ

ха хе хи хо ху хѣ

Derivatives ша ше ши шо or шѣ шу шѣ or шѣ

Thus in Russian the “hard” noun **ВОЛКЪ** (volk) wolf, has a plural **ВОЛКИ**, but an adjective **ВОЛЧІЙ**.

Thus, too:—

ПРАГА (Prágə) Prague, has an adjective **ПРАЖСКІЙ**
БОГЪ (Bokh) God, **БОЖЕСТВО** (Bažestvó) deity
СКАКАТЬ (skakát') to leap, **СКАЧУ** (skačú) I leap (= **КЮ**)
ВЕРХЪ (vérkh) above, **ВЕРШІНА** (virśínə) the height

к is always like the English *k* except in cases noted in § 4 (6).

г is always like the English *g* in “got” or “give”: *except* (1) it is used to represent the foreign sound *h*, e.g. **ГОЛЛАНДІЯ** (Gollándiya) Holland; also in the Russian word **ГОСПОДЪ** (Haspód') Lord. (2) It is sounded like a voiced *x* before dentals, e.g. **ТОГДА** (takhdá) then; also in **БОГЪ** God, and names of towns ending in **БУРГЪ**. (3) It is sounded **в** in the adjective gen. sing. termination -aro, -oro.

e.g. САМОГО	(səməvó)	of himself
ДУРНОГО	(durnóvə)	of the bad man
ДОБРАГО	(dóbrəvə)	of the good man

х is always sounded as in German *ach* or *ich*.

e.g. ХАТА	(khata)	hut
ХІЛЫЙ	(khíly)	feeble
САХАРЪ	(sákhər)	sugar

(4) *The Sibilants and Compound Consonants.*

с, з, ш, ж, ч are *always* sounded like the consonants in the English words *sword*, *zeal*, *short*, *leisure*, *church*; subject to the general remarks in § 4 (2, 7, and 8).

с and з can be hard or soft and take any vowel. When "soft" they are sounded high on the palate, as though a sharp *i*-sound followed. They are here denoted as *ś* and *ź*.

ш is a combination of *š* and *š̌*, which has to be practised.

ж, ш, and ц are always hard.

ч and щ always soft.

They can only be used with the following vowels:—

Hard: жа же жи жо or жё жу жь or жъ
 ша ше ши шё or шо шу шь or шъ
 ца це цы and ци цо цу цъ

ю, я, ы are never used after ж, ч or щ.

с and з in soft derivatives change to ш and ж, e.g. здѣсь (*zd'ěś*) hear, близъ (*bliz*) near, здѣшній, ближній.

Soft: ча че чи чо or чё чу чъ
 ща ще щи що or щё шу шъ

However, though in modern Russian the three sibilants ш, ж, ч are accounted hard, in older Russian ш and ж were soft; and the same rules of pronunciation in unaccented syllables apply to ша, жа, ча and ща as to я, viz. the vowel-value changes from *a* to *i*, and not *a* to *ə*.

e.g. часóвня	(česóvnja)	clock-tower
жарá	(zəpa or žirá)	heat
шагí	(šegí)	steps

и is always hard; it can, *unlike* any of the other sibilants, be followed by ы; and, *like* them, unaccented и always becomes, and is written, ѣ.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Instr.</i>	
e.g. отѣцъ (at'éts)	отцѣмъ (atsóm)	the father
нѣмецъ (ně'mits)	нѣмцемъ (ně'mtsim)	the German

i.e. цо should have been spelt цѣ.

Accented: цо жѣ or жо чѣ or чо цо шѣ or шо

Unaccented: ше же че це ше

(5) *The Liquids.*

л and р can be accompanied by any vowel.

The pronunciation of both лъ and ѡъ is quite different from that of the English *l*.

лъ* is a guttural-sounded *l* produced by raising the back of the tongue and contracting the air-passage: the front part of the tongue is drawn back and rounded, whilst the lips are rounded. It may be imitated by pronouncing the English word *pull* deep in the throat.

ѡъ is a palatal almost like the French *l* in "vil."

рѡъ is trilled, more like the Scotch *r*, рѡъ is palatal with a faint *yod*-sound. These sounds can only be acquired by ear.

With regard to the liquids л and р two special rules of formation should be noted:—

In roots of the type градъ, гóрадъ (grat, górat) town, the Church Slavonic had the monosyllabic form,

* In Polish written *l*.

Russian the disyllabic; and as the Church language has greatly influenced Russian, the modern language has examples of both.

e.g. злѣто, зѣлото (zlátə, zólətə) gold; странѣ (strəná) land; сторонѣ (stərəná) side; хранѣть (khrańít') to preserve; хоронѣть (khərənít') to bury; гѣродѣ (górət) city; but Петроградѣ (Pitragrát) Petrograd; бѣрегѣ (b'érek) coast; but прибѣрежѣ (pribíréži) the foreshore; мѣлодѣ (mólod) young; млѣдше (mládshi) younger.

§ 6. CONGLOMERATED CONSONANTS WHEN FINAL.

Russian dislikes a word ending in a conglomeration of consonants. Thus Egypt is Егѣпетѣ (Yegípit), where етѣ would in Old Russian have been written ѣтѣ. [v. § 2 (6).]

Similarly, in neuter and feminine nouns, where the genitive plural is the root, e.g. дѣлѣ, дѣлѣ (d'ěľə, d'ěľ'), -етѣ, deed, a vowel o, e or ě is sometimes inserted, especially when the last consonant is л or р.

e.g. сестрѣ, сѣстрѣ or сестѣрѣ (sistrá, syóstr or sistyór) sister; игрѣ (igrá) game, adjective игѣрный (igórny); свѣдьбѣ (svád'bə) wedding, свѣдебѣ (svádip); тѣткѣ (tyótka) aunt, тѣтокѣ (tyótək); бѣснѣ (básnya) fable, бѣснетѣ (básin); пѣлкѣ (páľkə) stick, пѣлокѣ (páľək).

§ 7. TRANSLITERATION INTO RUSSIAN.

The Russians, possessing their own special alphabet, have to transliterate foreign names and words. Within the limitations of their script they strive to be phonetic.

For *h* they use *г*.

e.g. Гѣмбурѣ Hamburg.

For the English *th* they substitute *т*.

e.g. Smith **Смитъ**.

For German *eu*, *äu* they use *ей*.

e.g. **Лейхтенбергъ** Leuchtenberg.

For the French *u*, German *ü*, they use *ю*.

e.g. **Брюссель** Brüssel (Brussels).

For the French *eu*, German *ö*, they use and write *ë*.

e.g. **Гёте** Goethe.

For the rest they try to represent sounds accurately.

e.g. **джентльменъ** gentleman, **Брайтонъ** Brighton,

комильфо comme il faut, **Поанкарэ** Poincaré,

Тулонъ Toulon, **Жанъ** Jean, **Динанъ** Dinant,

Лувенъ Louvain, **Бржежанъ** Brzeżań.

All these foreign words, *if* they end in consonants or vowels that accord with Russian declensions, namely *ъ*, *ь*, *й*, *а*, *я*, *о* (neuter), *е* (neuter), are declined in the same way regularly.

e.g. **Бёкономъ** by **Васон**, **въ Лувенѣ** in Louvain,
въ Динанѣ at Dinant (or Dinan). [v. § 23 (3).]

§ 8. RUSSIAN DIPHTHONGS.

Russian diphthongs are nearly all formed with *й*; and are *ай*, *яй*, sounded like *i* in "white," only broader; *ей* and *ѣй* like *ey* in "grey," but longer; *ой*, *ёй* almost as English "boy"; and *уй*, *юй* like *ui* in "bruted."

The digraph *ay* denotes a true diphthong only in foreign words.

e.g. **Брауншвейгъ** **Браунъ** Braunschweig (Brunswick) Brown.

In Russian words (when found) the *a* and the *y* are separate vowels.

e.g. **есаулъ** a Cossack captain. Cf. in French
"caoutchouc."

§ 9. THE CHANGE OF *e* TO *ë*.

The reader will have observed there is no symbol for *yo*, and the diæresis over *e* is only used in elementary school-books.

The following rules will guide him in the pronunciation of *e* as *ye*, or *yo*.

The rule is that accented *e* preceding a hard consonant or *oxytone* is pronounced *ë*.

e.g. *селó* (śiló) village, plural *сѣла*, *сѣль* (śólə, śol); *пла́чь* (pláčit) he weeps, but *растѣть* (rastyót) he grows; *ружьѣ* (ružó) gun; *смерть* (smert') death; *ѣ́лѹшка* (yóluskə), *ѣ́лка* (yołkə) fir-tree; *мертвы́й* (myórtvy) dead; *ко́нѣмъ* (kənyóm) by the horse; *на́ше* (náši) our (neut. nom. sing.); *твое* (tvayó) thy (neut. nom. sing.).

Exceptions:—

e accented before a hard syllable is *not* pronounced *ë*—

(1) In words ending in *-ѣць*, e.g. *купѣць* (kupéts) merchant. This is because *ц* was originally soft. [v. § 5 (4).]

(2) Before the adjectival terminations *-скій* and *-ній*, which are unaccented and were originally preceded by *ь*, softening the consonant.

e.g. *женá* (žiná) wife, plur. *жены* (žóny), adj. *жѣ́нскій* (žénski).

(3) In foreign words.

e.g. <i>апте́ка</i>	(apt'ékə)	apothecary's shop
<i>билѣ́тъ</i>	(bilét)	ticket
<i>депе́ша</i>	(d'epéšə)	despatch

(4) In words from Church Slavonic.

e.g. крестъ (křest) cross

нёбо (nébo) heaven, but нёбо palate of mouth

надѣжда (nad'ěždə) hope, but надѣжа (popularly)

And in some few other words, such as дѣрзкій bold, дѣрзость boldness, сквѣрный nasty, учебный educational, левъ lion (but Лѣвъ the name Leo), предметъ subject.

These words may also be taken as an exercise in the application of the rules regarding pronunciation.

(5) In some words where e should be spelt Ѣ, which never undergoes this change, cf. § 2 (3).

e.g. блескъ brightness, мелкій little, мелочь trifle, вредъ damage

(6) The preposition безъ without, which is generally proclitic.

e.g. безъ щитá (bišščitá) without a shield

(7) In the words верхъ above, цѣрковь church, пѣрвый first, четвѣръ Thursday, чѣрпать to draw up, мѣркнуть to grow dusk, стѣрва carrion, серпъ sickle, верба willow, сѣрдце heart, исчѣзъ vanished, ужѣ already, вообще in general.

ѣ remains before a soft consonant:—

(1) In declensions and conjugations where other forms are hard and ѣ is regular.

e.g. несѣшь

несѣтъ, несѣмъ, несѣте

thou carriest he, we, ye carry

утѣсь precipice, на утѣсѣ on the precipice

so берѣза birch-tree, въ берѣзѣ in the birch.

(2) In the instrumental singular of soft feminine nouns in я, like the hard nouns.

e.g. грозо́ю (гроза́ threat)

земле́ю (земля́ earth)

But моёю, твоёю, своёю, with e not ë.

Also before the adjectival termination -кій. As explained in § 33 (8), this -кій is a grammarian's misrendering of the former form -кой, and, this к being only visually soft, there is no real exception to the rule. So, too, щека́ cheek, щёки cheeks (because after gutturals ы is never used; v. § 5 (3)).

(3) In the following words ѣ becomes ѣ̣, like e, ë:—

звѣзда́	star	звѣзды (plural)
гнѣздо́	nest	гнѣзда (plural)
приобрѣсти́	to obtain	приобрѣлъ* (past tense)
цвѣсти́	to bloom	цвѣлъ (past tense)
сѣдло́	saddle	сѣдла (plural)
надѣвать	to dress	надѣванъ (past part. pass.)
		позѣвывать to yawn
		запечатлѣнъ impressed
		смѣтка sally

These words are merely misspelt.

In two words я is sounded ë:—

трясъ he shook, sounded трѣсъ

запрягъ he yoked (his horse), sounded запрѣгъ

Lastly, ея́, the genitive of она́ she, is sometimes pronounced еѣ like the accusative (which is ee, sounded yiyó).

* And other compounds of this verb.

ACCIDENCE.

§ 10. THE PARTS OF SPEECH (ча́сти рѣчи).

The parts of speech in Russian are :—

<i>Declined</i>	{	(1) Nouns, <i>имя существительное</i>
		(2) Adjectives, <i>имя прилагательное</i>
		(3) Pronouns, <i>мѣстоимѣніе</i>
<i>Conjugated</i>	(4) Verbs, <i>глаголь</i>	
<i>Declined</i>	(5) Numerals, <i>имя числительное</i>	
<i>Uninflected</i>	{	(6) Adverbs, <i>нарѣчіе</i>
		(7) Prepositions, <i>предлогъ</i>
		(8) Conjunctions, <i>сою́зъ</i>
		(9) Interjections, <i>междомѣтіе</i>

There is *no article*.

Occasionally *одинъ* (one) is used as an *indefinite article*.

There is *no special* form for adverbs formed from *adjectives*. The neuter singular is used, except in adjectives in *-скій*, where the form is *-ски*.

The verbs only have one regularly formed tense, namely the present ; and no other personal forms for past tenses, passives, moods, etc. These meanings are supplied by other simple modifications.

THE NOUN (имя существительное).

§ 11. PRELIMINARY OBSERVATIONS.

The Russian noun has three genders, masculine, feminine, and neuter (роды мужескій, женскій, средній). But Russian presents no great difficulties in the ascertainment of gender, for—

(a) Nouns *proper or common* denoting males only, whatever the termination, are masculine (“natural” gender).

e.g. Ивѣнъ John, Пётя Peter, Ивѣнько John, воеводѣ general, сиротѣ orphan (masc. or fem.).

(β) Nouns denoting females always have a feminine termination (“natural” and “grammatical” gender coincide).

(γ) The inflections of the masculine and neuter are identical, save in the nominative, vocative, and accusative singular and plural; just as in Latin *bellum* only differs from *equus* in these cases.

(δ) Generally speaking, the termination fixes the gender, unlike French or German, where the beginner has no guide, and can only learn by rote.

(i) Thus, nouns ending in ѣ, ѝ and ѥ are masculine, *despite foreign etymology*.

e.g. столъ	table	шрифтъ	writing.
Царь	Tsar	университѣтъ	university
бѣзисъ	basis	конь	horse
крѣзисъ	crisis	слонъ	elephant
	соловѣй	nightingale	

(ii) Nouns ending in о, е, ѥ are neuter.

e.g. поле	field	солнце	sun
дѣло	fact	бѣлье	washing

(iii) Words ending in а, я, ь are feminine, *despite foreign etymology*.

e.g. рука́ hand пу́ля bullet

дра́ма drama (τὸ δράμα, le drame, das Drama, etc.)

With this apparent exception, *as in Latin and Greek*, that words in а and я of masculine signification are masculine, but declined like feminines. Unlike German or French, the gender primarily follows the meaning, not the termination.

e.g. мужчи́на man слуга́ man-servant

дядя uncle Пётя Peter (short for Пётръ)

юноша youth уби́йца murderer (masc. or fem.)

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Terminations:</i>	ъ	а	о
	ь	я	е
	и	ь	мя

§ 12. THE DECLENSIONS.

There are three declensions.

(1) Original *o*-stems: *masculines in* ъ, ь *and* и, *neuters in* о, ё, е.

(2) Original *a*-stems: *feminines in* а and я.

(3) Original *i*-stems:

(a) One masculine word, путь path.

(β) Many feminines, principally abstracts in -ость, e.g. ско́рость speed.

(γ) Two relics of older declensions:

ма́ть, ма́тери, cf. *mater, matris*, mother

до́чь, до́чери daughter

(δ) Neuters in **мя, мени**.

e.g. **имя, имени** name, cf. Latin *nōmen, nōminis*; **сѣмя, сѣмени** seed, cf. Latin *sēmen, sēminis* [v. § 2 (2)]

In Old Slavonic there was, as in Latin, an *æ* declension (e.g. *manus, manūs*). This has disappeared, but has left traces in the irregular genitives and locatives in *y* of the first (Russian) declension: also in the masculine genitive plural termination **-овъ**.

§ 13. THE CASES.

There are seven cases.

- | | |
|---|--------|
| (1) Nominative, Именительный | падежь |
| (2) Vocative, Звательный | „ |
| (3) Accusative, Винительный | „ |
| (4) Genitive, Родительный | „ |
| (5) Dative, Дательный | „ |
| (6) Instrumental, Творительный | „ |
| (7) Locative or Prepositional, Предложный | падежь |

This list looks formidable, but, as with Apollyon's lion in "The Pilgrim's Progress," apprehensions vanish on a close approach.

The vocative only subsists in a few Church words, e.g. **Бо́же** from **Богъ** God, **Христѣ** from **Христѡсъ** Christ, **Господи** from **Господь** Lord, **Исѹсе** from **Исѹсъ** Jesus, **отче** from **отець** father. [v. § 69, II.]

The objective is identical with the nominative in all nouns denoting inanimate, but with the genitive in all nouns denoting animate objects. This rule has one exception—for the one instance where the accusative has an independent form, namely, the accusative singular of nouns in **a** and **я**.

e.g. **Я видѣлъ Царя** (genitive) **и Царіцу**.

I saw the Tsar and the Tsaritsa.

Учитель прочѣлъ ваше сочинѣніе.

The teacher read your work.

The original Slav accusative has vanished (except in the singular of nouns in *a* and *я*), and has been replaced by the nominative or genitive forms.

In all negative sentences the object is in the genitive, whatever the noun, and without exception.

e.g. Я не окончилъ своей работы.

I have not finished my work; the genitive being *partitive* in meaning "nothing of my work."

Я никогда не слыхалъ такихъ сказокъ.

I never heard such stories.

The instrumental case marks the agent by whom, and the locative or prepositional is used to denote the place in which; in modern Russian *it cannot be used by itself*, but only with certain prepositions, hence it is often called the "prepositional."

e.g. Въ селѣ (fsilě) in the village.

Я говорилъ о Николаѣ (ya govaril anikoláye).

I was talking of Nicholas.

Thus, virtually, there are only five separate forms for the cases—nominative, genitive, dative, instrumental, and locative.

§ 14. THE NUMBERS.

There are two numbers, singular and plural (единственное число, множественное число). The forms are almost identical for masculine nouns in *ъ*, *ь*, *й*, and feminines in *а*, *я*; neuters in *о*, *е*, *ё* only differ in forming the nominative and accusative plural in *а*, *я*, as in Latin.

In ancient Russian there was a dual, but this is obsolete. Some few forms of it survive as irregularities. [v. § 24 (3).]

The plural of nouns in *н*, of the third declension, is slightly different.

§ 15. HARD AND SOFT NOUNS.

All nouns of the first and second declensions are “hard” or “soft” throughout: i.e. there is a double scheme of declension in “hard” or “soft” vowels, according as the root is hard or soft.

Those who have learnt the rules in § 3 and § 5 will find no difficulty in grasping this fundamental difference, which underlies all Russian inflections.

Nouns of the *и* declension, the third, are naturally all “soft.”

SCHEME OF DECLENSIONS.

	First Declension.				Second Declension.		Third Declension.	
	Masculine. Hard. Soft.		Neuter. Hard. Soft.		Feminine. Hard. Soft.		Fem.	Neut.
<i>Sing.</i>								
Nom.	ъ	ь ѣ	о	е ё	а	я	ь	мя
Acc.	Like N. or G.		о	е ё	у	ю	ь	мя
Gen.	а [у]	я [ю]	а	я	ы	и	и	мени
Dat.	у	ю	у	ю	ѣ	ѣ	и	мени
Instr.	омъ	емъ	омъ	емъ	ою ,	сю	ію	менемъ
Loc.	ѣ [у]	ѣ [ю]	ѣ	ѣ	ѣ	ѣ	и	мени
<i>Plur.</i>								
Nom.	ы	и ѣ	а	я	ы	и	и	мена
Acc.	Like N. or G.		а	я	Like N. or G.		и	мена
Gen.	овъ ей	евъ ей	ъ	ей	ъ	ь ей	ей	менъ
Dat.	амъ	ямъ	амъ	ямъ	амъ	ямъ	ямъ	менамъ
Instr.	ами	ями	ами	ями	ами	ями	ями	менами
Loc.	ахъ	яхъ	ахъ	яхъ	ахъ	яхъ	яхъ	менахъ

It will be observed that in the plurals there is scarcely any divergence.

§ 16. EXAMPLES OF MASCULINE NOUNS IN THE
FIRST DECLENSION (пѣрвое склонѣніе).

Singular.

	tooth	work	=ery
N. V.	зубѣ	трудѣ	крикѣ
Acc.	зубъ	трудъ	крикъ
Gen.	зуба	трудá	крика
Dat.	зубу	трудú	крику
Instr.	зубомъ	трудомъ	крикомъ
Loc.	зубѣ	трудѣ	крикѣ

Plural.

N. V.	зубы	труды	крики
Acc.	зубы	труды	крики
Gen.	зубовъ	трудовъ	криковъ
Dat.	зубамъ	трудамъ	крикамъ
Instr.	зубами	трудами	криками
Loc.	зубахъ	трудахъ	крикахъ

Singular.

	key	a German	march
N. V.	ключѣ	нѣмецъ	маршѣ
Acc.	ключъ	нѣмца	маршъ
Gen.	ключа	нѣмца	марша
Dat.	ключу	нѣмцу	маршу
Instr.	ключомъ	нѣмцемъ	маршемъ
Loc.	ключѣ	нѣмцѣ	маршѣ

Plural.

N. V.	ключи	нѣмцы	марши
Acc.	ключи	нѣмцевъ	марши
Gen.	ключей	нѣмцевъ	маршей
Dat.	ключамъ	нѣмцамъ	маршамъ
Instr.	ключами	нѣмцами	маршами
Loc.	ключахъ	нѣмцахъ	маршахъ

These six examples illustrate regular forms in "hard" consonants. *Please observe the variations necessary, after gutturals and palatals, and re-read § 5 (3) and (4). The rules in § 5 apply to all declensions and conjugations.* Thus *ключамъ* is sounded *klučám*, *марши* *máršy*, etc.

Examples of Weak Stems.

	hero	horse	battle	knife (ж originally soft)
N. V.	герóй	конь	бо́й	ножъ
Acc.	герóя	коня́	бо́й	ножъ
Gen.	герóя	коня́	бо́я	ножа́
Dat.	герóю	коню́	бо́ю	ножу́
Instr.	герóемъ	конёмъ	бо́емъ	ножомъ
Loc.	герóѣ	конѣ́	бо́ѣ	ножѣ́

	<i>Plural.</i>			
N. V.	герóи	ко́ни	бо́и	ножи́
Acc.	герóевъ	коней́	бо́и	ножи́
Gen.	герóевъ	коней́	боёвъ	ножей́
Dat.	герóямъ	коня́мъ	бо́ямъ	ножа́мъ
Instr.	герóями	коня́ми	бо́ями	ножа́ми
Loc.	герóяхъ	коня́хъ	бо́лахъ	ножа́хъ

These examples should be learnt by heart; they are explained, and rules stated, in § 5 (3) and (4).

§ 17. EXAMPLES OF NEUTER NOUNS OF FIRST DECLENSION.

Hard Stems.

	yoke	village	quality
N. V. A.	ѣго	село́	ка́чество
Gen.	ѣга	села́	ка́чества
Dat.	ѣгу	селу́	ка́честву
Instr.	ѣгомъ	село́мъ	ка́чествомъ
Loc.	ѣгѣ́	селѣ́	ка́чествѣ́

		<i>Plural.</i>	
N. V. A.	и́га	се́ла	ка́чества
Gen.	игъ	се́ль	ка́чествъ
Dat.	и́гамъ	се́ламъ	ка́чествамъ
Instr.	и́гами	се́лами	ка́чествами
Loc.	и́гахъ	се́лахъ	ка́чествахъ

Soft and Sibilant Stems.

	<i>Singular.</i>	
	sea	school
N. V. A.	мо́ре	учи́лище
Gen.	мо́ря	учи́лища
Dat.	мо́рю	учи́лищу
Instr.	мо́ремъ	учи́лищемъ
Loc.	мо́рѣ	учи́лищѣ

	<i>Plural.</i>	
N. V. A.	моря́	учи́лища
Gen.	морей́	учи́лищъ
Dat.	морья́мъ	учи́лищамъ
Instr.	морья́ми	учи́лищами
Loc.	морья́хъ	учи́лищахъ

	<i>Singular.</i>	
	gun	knowledge
N. V. A.	ружьё́	зна́нiе
Gen.	ружьѣ́	зна́нiя
Dat.	ружьѹ́	зна́нiю
Instr.	ружьѣ́мъ	зна́нiемъ
Loc.	ружьѣ́	зна́нiи

	<i>Plural.</i>	
N. V. A.	ру́жья	зна́нiя
Gen.	ру́жей	зна́нiй
Dat.	ру́жьямъ	зна́нiямъ
Instr.	ру́жьями	зна́нiями
Loc.	ру́жьяхъ	зна́нiяхъ

These examples should be learnt by heart; a discussion of them will be found in § 27.

§ 18. EXAMPLES OF THE SECOND DECLENSION (второе склонение) IN а AND я.

The scheme for these nouns is:—

	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
N. V.	а	я	ы	я
Acc.	у	ю	Like N. or G. [v. § 13]	
Gen.	ы	я	ъ	я
Dat.	ѣ	ѣ	амъ	ямъ
Instr.	ою ои* ею ей*		ами	ями
Loc.	ѣ	ѣ	ахъ	яхъ

Examples:—

	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
	Hard.	Hard.	Soft.	Sibilant.
	widow	hand	bullet	soul
N. V.	вдовá	руká	пу́ля	душа́
Acc.	вдовú	ру́ку	пу́лю	ду́шу
Gen.	вдовы́	руки́	пу́ли	души́
Instr.	вдово́ю	руко́ю	пу́лею	душо́ю
D. L.	вдовѣ́	рукѣ́	пу́лѣ	душѣ́
N. V.	вдо́вы	ру́ки	пу́ли	ду́ши
Acc.	вдовѣ́	ру́ки	пу́ли	душѣ́
Gen.	вдовѣ́	рукѣ́	пу́ль	душѣ́
Instr.	вдовáми	рукáми	пу́лями	душáми
Dat.	вдовáмъ	рукáмъ	пу́лямъ	душáмъ
Loc.	вдовáхъ	рукáхъ	пу́ляхъ	душáхъ
	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>
	Sibilant.	Hard.	Fricative.	Fricative.
	candle	tear	empress	food
N. V.	свѣ́ча	слезá	цари́ца	пи́ща
Acc.	свѣ́чу	слезú	цари́цу	пи́щу
Gen.	свѣ́чи	слезы́	цари́цы	пи́щи
Instr.	{свѣ́чею}	слезо́ю	цари́цею	пи́щею
	{свѣ́чою}			
D. L.	свѣ́чѣ́	слезѣ́	цари́цѣ́	пи́щѣ́

* Contracted form.

Plural.

N. V.	свѣчи	слёзы	цари́цы
Acc.	свѣчи	слёзы	цари́цъ
Gen.	свѣчъ	слёзъ	цари́цъ
Instr.	свѣча́ми	слеза́ми	цари́цами
Dat.	свѣча́мъ	слеза́мъ	цари́цамъ
Loc.	свѣча́хъ	слеза́хъ	цари́цахъ

For pronunciation consult §§ 2 (2), 5 (3), 5 (4).

*Soft and Vocalic Stems.**Singular.*

	earth	lightning	family
N. V.	земля́	мо́лнія	семья́
Acc.	зе́млю	мо́лнію	семью́
Gen.	земля́	мо́лніи	семьи́
Instr.	земле́ю	мо́лніею	семье́ю
D. L.	землѣ́	мо́лніи	семьѣ́

Plural.

N. V.	зе́мли	мо́лніи	се́мьи
Acc.	зе́мли	мо́лніи	семѣ́й
Gen.	земѣ́ль	мо́лній	семѣ́й
Instr.	земля́ми	мо́лніями	семья́ми
Dat.	земля́мъ	мо́лніямъ	семья́мъ
Loc.	земля́хъ	мо́лніяхъ	семья́хъ

*Examples of Masc. in a, я.**Singular.*

	Hard.	Soft.
N. V.	ста́роста elder	дѣ́дя uncle
Acc.	ста́росту	дѣ́дю
Gen.	ста́росты	дѣ́ди
Instr.	ста́ростою	дѣ́дею
D. L.	ста́ростѣ́	дѣ́дѣ́

	<i>Plural.</i>	
N. V.	ста́росты	дѣди
Acc.	ста́рость	дѣдей
Gen.	ста́рость	дѣдей
Instr.	ста́ростами	дѣдями
Dat.	ста́ростамъ	дѣдямъ
Loc.	ста́ростахъ	дѣдяхъ

These examples should be learnt by heart. Consult § 2 (5), § 9, and § 11.

§ 19. THIRD DECLENSION (трѣтье склонѣнiе): NOUNS IN *и* and *мя*.

These nouns are always soft; most of the terminations are in *и*.*

MASCULINE.

Only one example survives:—

	<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
N. V. A.	пу́ть path	N. V. A.	пути́
G. D. L.	пути́	Gen.	путѣй
Instr.	путѣмъ	Dat.	путѣмъ
		Instr.	путѣми
		Loc.	путѣхъ

Formerly there were others of this type; e.g. день day, now a soft masc. of the first declension. But “after midday” is “полудни” (pəpəlúdní); дни being the old genitive.

§ 20. THIRD DECLENSION IN *и*: FEMININES.

These are numerous and important. In form they are liable to confusion with soft masculines like конь horse.

* Just like the Latin *turris*; with which type they correspond philologically.

E.g.

Singular.

	bone	horse	door
N. V.	кость	лошадь	дверь
Acc.	кость	лошадь	
Gen.	кости	лошади	
Dat.	кости	лошади	
Loc.	кости	лошади	
Instr.	костью } костію }	лошадью } лошадію }	Declined like кость

Plural.

N. V.	кости	лошади	
Acc.	кости	лошадѣй	
Gen.	костей	лошадѣй	
Dat.	костѣмъ	лошадѣмъ	
Instr.	костями	лошадѣми	
Loc.	костяхъ	лошадяхъ	Declined like кость

Singular.

	fortress	care
N. V.	крѣпость	осторожность
Acc.	крѣпость	осторожность
Gen.	крѣпости	осторожности
Dat.	крѣпости	осторожности
Loc.	крѣпости	осторожности
Instr.	крѣпостью	осторожностью

Plural.

N. V.	крѣпости	—
Acc.	крѣпости	—
Gen.	крѣпостей	—
Dat.	крѣпостѣмъ	—
Instr.	крѣпостями	—
Loc.	крѣпостяхъ	—

Observe звѣрь wild beast, which is now masculine has звѣрьми instr. plural, besides звѣрями.

§ 21. THIRD DECLENSION IN **н**: NEUTERS IN **мя**.
Consult § 2 (2).

Those who know Latin grammar have learnt the forms like *nōmen*, *nōminis*, *sēmen*, *sēminis*.

The Russian words of this type are very similar. E.g.

<i>Sing.</i>	name	flame	tribe	seed
Nom. Voc. Acc.	и́мя	пла́мя	пле́мя	сѣ́мя*
Gen. Dat. Loc.	и́мени			
Instr.	и́менемъ			
<i>Plur.</i>				
Nom. Voc. Acc.	имена́	Like и́мя	Like и́мя	Like и́мя, but gen. plural сѣ́мянъ
Gen.	имёнъ			
Dat.	имена́мъ			
Instr.	имена́ми			
Loc.	имена́хъ			

§ 22. THIRD DECLENSION: REMAINS OF OLDER FORMS.

(1) *Feminine*: There are only two.

Singular.

	mother	daughter
Nom. Voc.	ма́ть	до́чь
A. G. D. L.	ма́тери	до́чери
Instr.	ма́терью	до́черью

Plural.

Nom. Voc.	ма́тери	до́чери
Acc. Gen.	матере́й	дочере́й
Dat.	матери́мъ	дочери́мъ
Instr.	{ матери́ми матери́ми	{ доче́ри доче́ри
Loc.	матери́хъ	доче́ряхъ

Cf. *māter*, *mātris*; μήτηρ, μητρόс; θυγάτηρ, θυγατρόс.

* Cf. Latin *sēmen*.

(2) *Neuter*: There is only one, and this noun is irregular.

	<i>Singular.</i> child		<i>Plural.</i> children
Nom. Voc. Acc.	дитя́	Nom. Voc.	дѣти
Gen. Dat. Loc.	дитя́ти	Acc. Gen.	дѣтѣй
Instr.	дитя́тею	Dat.	дѣтямъ
		Inst.	дѣтьми́ (and дѣтьми)
		Loc.	дѣтяхъ

§ 23. (1) The foregoing sections, 16 to 22, illustrate the rules of Russian declension.

Some space must still be devoted to *apparent* exceptions (for euphonic reasons), to *true* exceptions (which are very few), and the principles of the accentuation in each class.

It is assumed that the reader has mastered §§ 2-6 and § 9, which supply the phonetic basis, the fundamental laws of Russian orthography.

(2) Some nouns are used only in the plural. These are masculine, feminine or neuter, according as their genitive assigns them to one or other of the declensions.

e.g. но́жницы, но́жницъ, etc., fem., scissors

щипцы́, щипцо́въ, etc., masc., pincers

воро́та, воро́тъ, etc., neut., gates

(3) Some nouns are indeclinable; namely, those which do *not* end in ъ, ь, ѣ, а, я (m. and f.), and о, е (neut.). Such are (i) a few Russian words, e.g. ко́фе coffee. (ii) Many foreign words, especially proper names; e.g. Са́рти Sarti, Перру́ччо Petruccio, Луи́б Loubet, Марте́лло Martello. The case in which these nouns stand must be understood from the context; e.g. въ поэ́зии Луи́гелло in

Longfellow's poetry, во время президентства Карно́ in the Presidency of Carnot. On the other hand, names like Рена́нъ Renan, Дина́нъ Dinant, Аахенъ Aix-la-Chapelle, Шопе́нъ Chopin, are declined like ordinary nouns. [v. § 7.] E.g. Рѣчь сэра Эдуа́рда Гре́я, the speech of Sir Edward Grey (Грей).

§ 24. REMARKS ON THE MASCULINE NOUNS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION.

(1) In old Slavonic, as in Latin, there used to be a declension in "u," e.g. *mānus*, *manūs*; e.g. in Russian сынъ son (Gothic *sunus*). This declension has completely vanished, but has left traces in the following irregularities:—

(a) Some nouns, denoting materials, have mostly *unaccented* genitive in -у, -ю.

e.g. ча́ю from ча́й tea

са́хару from са́харъ sugar

наро́ду from наро́дъ people

e.g. ча́шка ча́ю a cup of tea, but э́тотъ ро́дъ са́хара this sort of sugar.

e.g. мно́го наро́ду many people, ха́ра́кте́ръ а́нгли́йскаго наро́да the character of the English people.

Also in the phrases:—

съ ве́рху from on high

съ ни́зу from beneath

бе́зъ то́лку senseless

и́зъ ви́ду out of sight

and a few others.

(β) Some *monosyllables* have a locative in -у, -ю *accented*, used with **въ** in, **на** on.

e.g. **въ лѣсу́** in the forest, but **при лѣсѣ́** at the wood
въ годѹ́ in the year
въ бою́ in the fight
въ краю́ on the edge
на льду́ on the ice
въ снѣгу́ in the snow
въ раю́ in Paradise
на берегу́ on the shore [v. § 5 (5).]

(γ) **сынѣ́** son, **кумѣ́** godfather, and others, insert the syllable -ов- into the plural.

e.g. [сыны́ sons (poetical)]	сыновѣ́
кумѣ́ godfather	кумовѣ́
зять son-in-law	зятевѣ́
сватъ marriage-broker	сватовѣ́

(δ) It is in the nouns in “у” that the genitive plural -овѣ́ originated; it has spread to nearly all masculine stems.

(2) Some nouns form their plural in -ѣ́; this is really an old feminine collective form.

e.g. **братъ** brother, **братѣ́** (gen. **братѣ́въ**, dat. **братѣ́мъ**, instr. **братѣ́ми**, loc. **братѣ́хъ**)
камень stone, **каменѣ́** stones, **ка́мни** single stones
бросать ка́мними, not **каменѣ́ми**, to stone a man
стулъ a chair, **сту́лья**
сукъ a bough, **су́чья** [v. § 5 (3).]
уголь coal, **уго́лья**

зубъ tooth, зѹбѹя teeth (of a machine), зѹбы
teeth (of a man)

листь leaf, лѣстья leaves of a tree, листы́ (leaves
of paper)

другъ friend, друзѹ́ (gen. друзѣ́й)

князь prince, князѹ́ (gen. князѣ́й)

мужъ husband, мужѹ́ (gen. мужѣ́й)

зять son-in-law, зятѹ́ (gen. зятѣ́й), also зятевѹ́

дѣверъ the husband's brother, деверѹ́ (gen.
деверѣ́й)

(3) Some masculine nouns form their plural in -á.

e.g. рукавъ	sleeve	рукава́
бе́регъ	shore	берега́
глазь	eye	глаза́
пóлогъ	bed-canopy	полога́
рогъ	horn	рога́
кóлоколъ	bell	колокола́

It will be observed most of these are essentially
duals in meaning; *this á is the old dual, Nom. and Acc.*
Cf. § 26 (5) (3).

This á ending has been extended to a few nouns—

e.g. гóродъ	town	города́
лѣсъ	wood	лѣса́
гóлосъ	voice	голоса́
домъ	house	дома́

as well as most loan-words in -еръ and -оръ—

e.g. дóкторъ	doctor	доктора́
профѣссоръ	professor	профессора́
кучеръ	coachman	кучера́
<i>but</i> актѣръ	actor (French <i>acteur</i>)	актѣры
имперáторъ	Emperor	имперáторы

Other instances are:—

о́бразъ	shapes	о́бразы	shapes	образа́	images
хлѣ́бъ	bread	хлѣ́бы	loaves	хлѣ́ба	corn
цвѣ́тъ	colour	цвѣ́ты	flowers	цвѣ́та	colours
мѣ́хъ	bellows	мѣ́хи			
мѣ́хъ	fur	мѣ́ха			
о́рденъ	the order	о́рдены	the orders (e.g. religious)	ордена́	the orders (decorations)

(4) The genitive plural of masculines in -ъ originally ended in -ъ, and was only accentually differentiated from the nominative. This genitive plural in -ъ still obtains in the neuters and feminines. [v. § 24 (1) (δ).]

Hence it is (v. paradigm § 15) that masculines ending in a weak consonant form the genitive plural in -ей; e.g. царь, царя́, царь'ь, which became царь'й, and was pronounced and spelled царей in Russian, after ь and ь had become mute.

So, too, words in -жь, -а, -шь (e.g. ножъ knife, пожа́, пожей́), because [v. § 5 (4)] ж and ш, and ч and щ *were all originally soft*.

But й is regarded as a consonantal ending, and takes -евъ; e.g. строй construction, строевъ.

Some masculine nouns still have a genitive plural in -ъ,

e.g. во́лосъ	hair	<i>Gen. plur.</i> волосъ
разъ	time (so many times)	разъ
сапо́гъ	boot	сапо́гъ
драгу́нъ	dragoon	драгу́нъ
ту́рокъ	Turk	ту́рокъ
гренаде́рь	grenadier	гренаде́рь
глазъ	eye	глазъ
ре́крутъ	recruit	ре́крутъ

as well as all those which form their nominative singular in *-инъ*, and are thus distinguished by diversifying the nominative.

Lastly, masculine nouns of measurement—

e.g. *фунтъ* a pound (= 0.90 lb. avoirdupois)

сажень a lineal measure (= 7 feet)

make their genitive plural thus: *фунтъ, сажень*.

(5) Nom. sing. in *-инъ*.

Many words, especially words descriptive of race, creed, etc., have a *singular* with the adjectival form *-инъ* [v. § 34 (2)], but drop the *-инъ* in the plural, forming the nom. plural in *-e* or *-a*. E.g.

	Roman	Christian	Englishman
Nom. sing.	Рѣмлянинъ	христiанѣинъ	Англичѣанинъ
Gen. sing.	Рѣмлянина	христiанѣина	Англичѣанина
Nom. plur.	Рѣмляне	христiанѣ	Англичѣане
Gen. plur.	Рѣмлянъ	христiанъ	Англичѣанъ

	Tatar	master	wife's brother
Nom. sing.	татѣринъ	бѣринъ	шѣринъ
Gen. sing.	татѣрина	бѣрина	шѣрина
Nom. plur.	{ татѣры татѣре }	бѣре	шѣрьѣ
Gen. plur.	татѣръ	баръ	шѣрьѣвъ

хозяинъ (master of the house) is not quite regular. In the *singular*, *хозяинъ, хозяина*, etc.

<i>Plural</i> Nom. Voc.	хозяѣва [cf. § 24 (1) (γ)]
„ Acc. Gen.	хозяѣвъ
„ Dat. Instr. Loc.	хозяѣв-, амъ, ами, ахъ

In this connection [v. § 34 (2)] the possessive adjectives in *-инъ* used as *proper names* are declined as stated in that section, and not like the above.

(6) Irregular formations.

Singular.

	Christ	The Lord
Nom.	Христóсъ	Госпóдь (Насрód')
Voc.	Христé	Гóсподи
Gen.	Христá	Гóспода
Dat.	Христý	Гóсподу
Instr.	Христóмъ	Гóсподомъ
Loc.	Христѣ	Гóсподѣ

neighbour

devil

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
Nom. Voc.	сосѣ́дъ	сосѣ́ди	чортъ*	чѣ́рти
Acc.	сосѣ́да	сосѣ́дей	чо́рта	чѣ́ртѣй
Gen.	etc.	Like царь, soft stem.	чо́рта	Like царь, soft stem.
Dat.			чо́рту	
Instr.			чо́ртомъ	
Loc.			чо́ртѣ	

человѣ́къ, man (in general : мужъ husband, мужчи́на male), generally forms its plural in люди́ (declined like a plural of an и stem).

When the plural is used, the genitive plural is человѣ́къ, e.g. двáдцать человѣ́къ twenty men.

§ 25. ACCENTUATION OF THE MASCULINE NOUNS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION.

Most masculine nouns retain the accent of the nominative ; but, as the original nominative termination ѣ has become mute, and cannot be accented, some nouns seem to throw the accent forward on to the other terminations.

* Not to be confused with чѣра́ (fem.) feature.

E.g. **человѣкъ** man, **сарай** barn, **братъ** brother, retain the accent on the syllable accented in the nominative, i.e. on the stem; e.g. **человѣкомъ**, **сарайю**, **брата**.

No general rule can explain the variance of the accent; the following principles may be a guide.

I. The following derivatives were originally accented on the termination **ъ**, and therefore throw the accent forward on to the other terminations:—

- (1) All names in **-инъ**, e.g. **Карамзинъ** Karamzin.
- (2) All words in **-ецъ**, e.g. **купѣцъ** merchant.
- (3) All derivatives in **-акъ**,* **-икъ**, **-лкъ**, **-окъ**, **-ѣжъ**, **-ачъ**; e.g. **дуракъ** fool, **старикъ** old man, **падѣжъ** case, **палачъ** executioner, **кусокъ** morsel, **скрипачъ** fiddler, **тюфякъ** mattress.
- (4) All derivatives in **-унъ**, **-аръ** (except **государъ** Lord, as a royal title, **государя**), **-ыръ**, **-иръ**, and the months in **-брь**; e.g. **девятого октября** on the 9th October, **табуны** herd of horses, **столяръ** carpenter, **пузырь** bellows; but **панцырь** (**панцыря**) cuirass.
- (5) A very large number of words, such as **столъ** table, **быкъ** ox, **женыхъ** bridegroom, **плодъ** fruit, **полкъ** regiment, **языкъ** tongue, **пѣтухъ** cock. Nothing but reading and practice can determine which these are.

II. Secondly, many words retain the accent as in the nominative in the singular, but throw it forward in the plural; e.g. **садъ** garden, **чинъ** rank, **шагъ** step.

* Cf. the Greek accent *акос*, *икос*,

III. Thirdly, some words throw the accent forward on to the termination in the genitive plural and following cases.

e.g. богъ	god	богѡвъ
воръ	thief	ворáми
гвоздь	nail	гвоздѣми
крѹгъ	circle	кругáмъ
лѣбедь	swan	о лебедѣхъ

In all cases the original accent on the nominative must be learnt from the dictionary or a teacher; *as a general rule, a masculine noun that throws its accent forward on the genitive singular throws it forward on to all the terminations; and a noun not accented on the last syllable retains the same accent throughout.*

This section must be read subject to all the rules stated in § 24 and § 9.

§ 26. REMARKS ON THE NEUTER NOUNS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION.

Except, in so far as the masculine nouns have more inflections, the special remarks in § 24 apply to neuters as well.

(1) In § 24 (4) it was observed that all masculine nouns of the first declension ending in a consonant + ъ or -жъ, -шъ, -щъ, -чъ (which were all originally soft, v. § 5 (4)), form the genitive plural in -ей. The same applies to all soft neuter nouns in -е, and the same arguments hold good.

e.g. поле field полей

But, with this difference, neuters in -цѳ, -це, -щѳ, -ще, -шѳ, -ше, -чѳ, -че, form the genitive plural in ѳ.

e.g. плечѳ shoulder плечѳ [v. also § 26 (5) (β).]
 жилищѳ home жилищѳ
 лицѳ face лицѳ

Nouns in -ѳ form the genitive plural in -ей, the reason being that the ѳ is inserted to divide the syllables, so that such words come under the general rule of neuters ending in ѳ.

e.g. ружѳ gun ружей
 питьѳ drink питьей

(2) Neuters in -іе, and feminines in -ія (these terminations being unaccented) spell the ѳ terminations as they are sounded, viz. и.

e.g. пониманіе the understanding
 Loc. о пониманіи

These nouns in -іе are very common, being the regular verbal nouns formed from the infinitives to express the abstract idea of the verb.

e.g. выразить to express, выраженіе the expressing
 имѳть to own, имѳніе the estate

The *genitive plural* in nouns in -іе and -ія is -іѳ.

e.g. Я не хочу егѳ имѳній
 Ya ne khačú yivó iměni
 I do not desire his property

In poetry and colloquial speech such nouns are contracted, e.g. желанье for желаніе.

Some such nouns form a genitive plural in *ьевъ*, e.g. *плáтье* clothing, *плáтьевъ*; *кúшанье* food, *кúшаньевъ*; but these are exceptions, for such nouns are in reality paroxytone collectives, the old collective termination being *-ѣ*, plural *-ѧ*.

These nouns are *only* found in the contracted form, and may be compared with the plurals *друзыѧ*, *братыѧ* [v. § 24 (2)].

(3) *Mixed masculine and neuter declension.*

Augmentative nouns in *-ище*, e.g. *селó* village, *селище* a big village, form their plural like that of the soft masculine nouns, e.g. *конь*. Thus *селищи*, *селищей*, etc. But *кладбище*, cemetery, is regular; the augmentative sense has disappeared.

So, too, *diminutives* in *-ко*.

e.g. *словéчко* a little word

Pl. Nom. Voc. Acc. *словéчки*

Gen. *словéчекъ* [v. § 6.]

Observe, too, *очкó*, *очки́* (little eyes), now spectacles; *очкóвъ*, and so on.

Some other miscellaneous examples are:—

сóлнце	sun	сóлнца	and -ы	сóлнцевъ
дно	bottom	дны		донъ
я́блоко	apple	я́блоки		я́блокъ or я́блоковъ

(4) *Plurals in -ѧ* [v. § 24 (2)].

Neuter words capable of a collective meaning have a collective plural like the masculine nouns.

e.g. дéрево	tree	дерéвья
перó	feather	пéрья
крылó	wing	крыла and крылья

Observe.—колѣно, knee, has three meanings and three plurals: (1) колѣна́ family or race; (2) колѣни, колѣне́й knees; (3) колѣ́нья, колѣ́ньевъ knots on wood.

(5) *Irregular forms.*

These may conveniently be considered under two heads: (a) obsolete declensions, of which a few relics subsist; (β) dual forms.

(a) *Obsolete forms.*

Не́бо heaven, чу́до miracle, сло́во word, тѣ́ло body, ко́ло wheel, formerly belonged to the same declension as the Latin *genus, generis*, Greek *νέφος, νέφους (νέφεσος)*. Hence the adjectival forms are: словéсный literary, небéсный heavenly, чудéсный wonderful, тѣлéсный corporeal, and колéсный pertaining to a wheel.

Of all these forms only two survive in regular use: чу́до, чудесá, чудéсь [not чудёсь, cf. § 9, exception (4)]; and не́бо, небесá, небéсь [not небёсь].

The modern Russian for wheel is колесó, plural колёса.

Сло́во and тѣ́ло are regular like дѣ́ло.

In words denoting the young of animals a plural -ята is still used, the singular being -ёнокъ.

e.g. котёнокъ	kitten	котя́та, котя́ть
жеребёнокъ	colt	жеребя́та, жеребя́ть
волчёнокъ	wolf-cub	волча́та, волча́ть

[v. § 5 (3).]

So, too, цыпля́та chickens, ребя́та children (in lofty language, used as the plural of ребёнокъ), etc., and also вну́къ grandson, вну́чата great grand-children.

(β) *Dual forms.*

о́ко	eye (poetical only)	бчи, очей
у́хо	ear	у́ши, ушей
колѣ́но	knee	колѣ́ни, колѣ́ней
сто	one hundred	двѣ́сти two hundred
плечо́	shoulder	плѣ́чи, плечъ

§ 27. ACCENTUATION OF THE NEUTER NOUNS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION.

As in all cases the accent on the nominative must be ascertained from the dictionary or the teacher.

Dissyllabic words reverse the accent in the plural.

e.g.	тѣ́ло	body	тѣ́ла
	мо́ре	sea	моря́
	се́ло	village	се́ла [v. § 9.]
	ребро́	rib	рёбра
	де́рево	tree	дерё́вья
	письмо́	letter	пи́сьма, пи́семъ
	пра́во	right	права́
	се́рдце	heart	серди́а
Except	блю́до	vessel	блю́да
	го́рло	throat	го́рла

Trisyllabic nouns, if oxytone, have the plural paroxytone; if the stem is accented, make the plural oxytone.

e.g.	колесо́	wheel	колёса
	полотно́	cloth	полотна́
	зе́ркало	mirror	зеркала́, зе́ркаль or зерка́ль
	кру́жево	lace	кружева́, кру́жевъ
	о́зеро	lake	озера́ or озёра

Derivative nouns in -ie, -ство, retain the same accent.

e.g. существó	being	существá
знáние	knowledge	знáнія
правíteльство	administration	правíteльства

§ 28. REMARKS ON THE SECOND DECLENSION.

(1) Genitive plural in -ь and -ей.

Practically the same conditions obtain as with the neuters. [v. § 26 (1).]

Soft nouns in -я and -ча, -ша and -жа, regularly form the genitive plural in -ь and -чъ, and the instrumental singular in -ёю, -ею; -чóю, -чею; -шóю, -шею; -жóю, -жею. [v. § 5 (4).] So, too, nouns in -ца preceded by a vowel: instrumental singular -цóю, -цею; genitive plural -цъ.

But nouns in -ча, -жа, -ша, when preceded by a consonant, form the genitive plural in -ей: and the same applies to nouns in -ща.

e.g. вѣкша	squirrel	вѣкшей
саранча́	grasshopper	саранчѣй
Similarly: дѣ́дя	uncle	дѣ́дей
нозд́ря	nostril	нозд́рей
до́ля	lot	до́ль and долѣ́й
за́ря	dawn*	за́рь and зарѣ́й

Nouns in -ья also have a genitive plural in -ей *regularly*, when accented; -и́й unaccented.

e.g. лгу́нья	liar	лгу́нѣй
статѣ́я	article	статѣ́й
гостѣ́я	guest (fem.)	гостѣ́й
свинѣ́я	pig	свинѣ́й

* Also the evening half-light.

(2) In ordinary speech and in poetry the instrumental singular -ою, -ею is contracted to -оѣ and -еѣ, and often thus written.

(3) Many nouns in the second declension are masculine, *because of their meaning*, as in Latin *agricola*.

e.g. дѣ́дя uncle, ю́ноша youth, Са́ша diminutive of Алекса́ндръ, Ко́ля diminutive of Никола́й, Пе́тя diminutive of Пе́тръ, слуга́ servant (feminine form служа́нка), сирота́ orphan, masc. or fem. *according to meaning*, судѣ́я judge, бродя́га vagabond.

(4) There are very many derivative nouns in -і́я, amongst them the loan-words from the Latin *tio*, e.g. на́ція nation.

The rule regarding these is the same as with the derivative neuters in -іе [v. § 26 (2)], namely that the ѣ forms are written and sounded и.

e.g. а́рмія army, въ а́рміи in the army, а́рміи genitive plural; so, too, Арме́нія Armenia, А́нглія England, Фра́нція France, etc.

Note.—Ма́рія, о Ма́ріи; but Ма́рья, о Ма́рьѣ, Mary.

§ 29. ACCENTUATION OF SECOND DECLENSION.

The rules for the accentuation of this declension are comparatively easy.

Only oxytone nouns, i.e. those accented on the final syllable, can shift the accent. All others retain the accent on the same syllable.

Of oxytone nouns only those which are dissyllabic can shift the accent.

Amongst these [v. § 5 (5)] must be included liquid stems, such as борода́ beard, голова́ head (contrast глава́ chapter).

Trisyllabic and polysyllabic nouns retain the same fixed accent.

For the *oxytone dissyllables* there are two sets of rules.

(a) The accent goes back on the root *only* in the nom. plur.

e.g. вдова́	widow	вдо́вы
волна́	wave	во́лны
игра́	game	и́гры
ре́ка	river	ре́ки
судья́	judge	су́ды
слуга́	servant	слу́ги
стрѣла́	arrow	стрѣ́лы
струна́	string	стру́ны
(e.g. of violin)		
узда́	reins	у́зды

and a few others.

(β) The accent goes back to the stem in the acc. sing. as well.

e.g. рука́ hand ру́ку, ру́ки
(Occasionally, by analogy, жёнамъ, жёнами, жёнахъ;
сёстрамъ, зёмлямъ, звёздамъ are mistakenly used.)

борода́	beard	бо́роду, бо́роды
вода́	water	во́ду, во́ды
нога́	foot	но́гу, но́ги

§ 30. REMARKS ON THE THIRD DECLENSION.

The original nouns belonging to this class are few in number, but very common in use. Some of them have both Slavonic and Russian forms [v. § 5 (5)].

e.g. во́лость an administrative district, вла́сть power.*

The derivative nouns in -ость are innumerable, and abstract nouns are mostly created with this termination. All such derivative nouns accent the root-syllable. [v. § 98, V.]

e.g. ста́рь old, ста́рость old age.

(1) There is a special accented locative ending in *и*, used *only* after *на* and *въ* [cf. § 24 (1)].

e.g. гру́дь breast, на груди́; вѣ́твь twig, на вѣтви́;
сте́пь steppe, въ степи́; Русь Russia (poetical,
usual word Росси́я), на Руси́.

(2) Це́рковь church, has in the dat., instr., and loc. plural a for я.

i.e. церква́мъ, -а́ми, -а́хъ

§ 31. ACCENTUATION OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

The accentuation follows the paradigms in § 20; but some reservations must be made.

(1) Many of these nouns accent the termination on the *dative*, *instrumental*, and *locative plural*.

e.g. до́лжность duty, должностя́мъ, -я́ми, -я́хъ

* Such feminines in -ость and -чь correspond etymologically with the English forms "might," "draught," German "Wacht," etc.

(2) Amongst such nouns, the following have the accented locative singular [v. § 30].

бровь	brow	печь	oven	связь	connection
грудь	breast	рѣчь	speech	часть	part
кость	bone	степь	steppe	плóщадь	
честь	honour	тѣнь	shadow		public square
ось	axle	цѣпь*	chain		

§ 32. THE "EUPHONIC" VOWELS o, e, ё.

In § 2 (7) and § 6 brief reference was made to the former vocalic values of ъ and ь, as short ѓ and ї, and to the aversion of the Russian language from heavy combinations of final consonants, especially when there are liquids (such as в, р and л) in the conglomeration.

Under these two heads simple phonetic changes, *which are written*, occur in *all* the declensions, and these rules must be applied to all of the declensions.

I. *Extrusion of ъ and ь when unaccented.* The ancient Russian for "day" was дѣнь-ѣ'. When ь became mute, being "open," the first vowel was transformed to е; hence the nominative дѣнь, genitive днѣ. Similarly днó bottom, gen. pl. донѣ (for дѣнь-ѣ', дѣнь).

This law may be tabulated:—

ъ, originally accented or in close syllables, becomes о; unaccented disappears.

ѣ, originally accented or in close syllables, becomes е or ё; unaccented disappears, or is retained in spelling to soften the consonant.

* Not to be confused with цѣпь flail.

e.g. лóбъ (formerly лѣбъ') forehead, gen. лѣ́а; ротъ (formerly рѣтъ') mouth, gen. рѣ́а; левъ (formerly лѣвъ') lion, gen. лѣ́ва*; сотъ, gen. of сто (for съто), one hundred; лёдъ ice (лѣдъ'), gen. лѣ́да.*

Incidentally it may be stated here that the great complication in the accentuation of masculines arises from the loss of the final inflection of the nominative. Most Russian nouns retain the accent on the same syllable; but where the original inflection was formerly accented and has become mute (i.e. either ъ or ь), the accent had to be thrown back.

In the feminines and neuters the original inflection a, o, has been retained; hence the rules are much simpler.

Similar instances are: пёсъ dog, genitive пѣ́а; мгнѣ, but мгновѣ́ние, both meaning moment, the latter should have been spelt мѣ́гновѣ́ние; мѣ́ла mist, for мѣ́ла; возъ, verbal prefix meaning "up," but въ́растать to grow up (for въ́растать); сонъ sleep, сна́; лёнъ linen, лѣ́на, etc.

As a contrast: Russian, мѣдъ, мѣ́да mead (the drink), Old Russian, ме́дъ, ме́да; i.e. the original accent was on the stem.

Some other instances may illustrate the same point. All derivatives in ёцъ (formerly ёѣъ) were once oxytone, i.e. accenting the termination ѣ'; hence, they "throw the accent forward" in the other inflections, and extrude the é of the nominative which is merely epenthetic, a strengthening of the original ь (отѣ́цъ).

* The ь is retained to indicate the soft sound.

So that the genitive of *отецъ* is *отца́* ; so, too —

купе́ць	merchant	купца́
вѣ́нецъ	wreath	вѣнца́

But, where the *-ецъ* is unaccented, the accent is stable and the form merely abbreviated in spelling, e.g. *Нѣ́мецъ* German (for *Нѣ́мьць*), *Пѣ́мца*, etc.

Conversely in the genitive plurals in *ъ* or *ь*, *о*, *е*, *е* must be restored.

e.g. яйцо́	egg	яи́ць *
зло́	evil	золь
кольцо́	ring	ко́лець
письмо́	letter	пи́семъ
окно́	window	о́конъ
сте́кло	pane of glass	сте́колъ
крѣ́сло	armchair	крѣ́селъ
овца́	sheep	ове́ць
судьба́	fate	суде́бъ
ру́чка	little hand	ру́чекъ
копе́йка	the coin	копе́екъ

And observe that after a vowel the symbol ѣ replaces the symbol ь, but has the same value.

e.g. ше́я neck, diminutive ше́йка, ше́екъ, i.e. *šeika*, *šeïk* ; со́ловей nightingale, со́ловьи, со́ловьевъ ; муравьё́й ant, муравьи́, муравьёвъ.

In these last two instances *ѣи* represents an original *ь'и*, which in Russian became *ѣи*. The original inflection would have been со́ловь'и, со́ловь'я.

II. *Insertion of o and e for euphony.* Similarly, heavy final combinations of consonants are lightened in

* Irregular for *лѣць*.

the nominative singular of masculines and genitive plurals of feminines and neuters; i.e. the terminations in *ъ* and *ь*.

Some instances have already been given; viz. *стекло́, кресло́, письмо́*.

Others are:—

		<i>Gen. Plur.</i>
ма́рка	a <i>mark</i> (German coin)	ма́рокъ
и́гла	needle	и́голъ
и́гра	game	и́горъ
ро́зга	cane	ро́зогъ
сестра́	sister	сестѣръ or сѣстръ
пѣ́сня	song	пѣ́сенъ
ба́рышня	"mademoiselle"	ба́рышень
со́тня	a body of one hundred	со́тенъ
ку́хня	kitchen	ку́хонъ or ку́хонь
земля́	earth	земѣль
ребро́	rib	рёберъ
ведро́	ewer	вѣдеръ

In the nominatives:—

		<i>Gen.</i>
орѣ́ль (pronounce <i>aryól</i>)	eagle	орла́
огóнь	fire	огни́
вѣ́теръ	wind	вѣ́тра
вѣ́хоръ	whirlwind	вѣ́хря
наѣ́мъ	hire	найма́
боѣ́цъ	warrior	бойца́
за́яцъ	hare	за́йца

Observe the vowel *o* or *e* is inserted according as the syllable is hard or soft.

Thus, too, тѣмá darkness, тѣмный dark, тща́тельно (for тыща́тельно) in vain, тощи́й lean, and compare Russian дочь, дочѣри, daughter, with the Church Slavonic дщѣри (for дѣщѣри), cf. θυγατέρες.*

An apparent exception really confirms the rule, namely, that, when the effect of extruding the euphonic vowel would be to accumulate consonants, the vowel is retained.

e.g. мертвѣць	corpse	мертвенá
близнѣць	twin	близнецá

III. Nevertheless, some heavy combinations of final consonants are tolerated.

(1) In loan words.

e.g. шрифѣть type (from German) [v. § 11 (δ).]
министръ minister (from French)

(2) In the genitive plural of the abstract termination -ство.

e.g. общѣствѣ from общество company
министѣрствѣ from министерство ministry

(3) In a few words where resolution would not be easy.

e.g. жѣртѣ sacrifice жертвѣ

(4) In such words as рубль (masculine) rouble, корабль ship (masculine like конь), the л is mute. [v. § 4 (9).]

(5) In the formation of predicative adjectives no vowel is inserted before р.

e.g. мудръ wise, быстръ swift. [v. § 36 (4).]

* Whence падчерица, § 97.

IV. In the feminine in *и* of the third declension observe—

цѣрковь	church	цѣркви, цѣрковью
любовь	love	любви, любовью
вошь	louse	вши, вощью
ложь	lie	лжи, ложью
рожь	rye	ржи, рожью

But when *Любовь* is a girl's name it retains in "o" throughout; thus, *Любови, Любовью*.

THE ADJECTIVE.

§ 33. PRELIMINARY OBSERVATIONS.

(1) *The syntactical importance of the adjective in Russian.*

In English the adjectival function can be expressed in many really irregular ways; e.g. by a noun, "the village pump"; by combinations of adjectives and nouns, "the Civil Service Examination," even to the point of ambiguity, e.g. "the Women's Red Cross Slavery Abolition League"; also, vulgarly, by adverbs, "this 'ere bloke." In German, also, long compound nouns are yet more used to show the dependence.

Russian adjectives are fully declined in gender, number, and case.

In Russian, composition of words is rare and occasional, and fully declined adjectives must be used.

e.g. зубная боль tooth-ache

правительственные указы government decrees
баранья шерсть sheep's wool, etc.

Cf. in French, le ministère de l'intérieur, Home Office; les perquisitions militaires, war demands.

(2) In addition to this, Russian frequently prefers an adjective where other languages use other forms.

e.g. стеклынная бутылка a glass bottle, une bouteille de ver; St. Elias' day Ильи́нъ день; Igor's Army Иго́ревъ полкъ; the local custom та́мошний или здѣ́шний обы́чай (from тамъ there, здѣсь here); a reindeer's horns оле́ньи ро́га.

Such adjectives are called *possessive*, e.g. Петро́въ пра́здникъ St. Peter's holiday; Цари́цыно село́ the Empress's village; or *descriptive*, e.g. бо́жій хра́мъ God's Temple.

Ordinary adjectives when used with nouns are called *attributive*, e.g. до́брый good, худо́жественный artistic; i.e. those not attached to some particular noun, and not serving as a kind of inflected genitive.

(3) Except in the nominative (e masculine, я feminine and neuter) there is no distinction of gender in the plural adjective.

(4) Russian discards the copula "I am, he is," etc., and uses a special form as the *predicative* adjective; this form being the nominative, singular and plural, of the old simple form of the attributive adjective.

e.g. я Гео́ргій	I am George
онъ столя́ръ	he is a carpenter
они́ миѣ́ знако́мы	they are known to me

(5) The attributive adjective can in general have two forms as stated in the preceding section (4), one full, when agreeing with a noun, the other predicative; the latter only used and only surviving with a nomina-

tive form. (Certain predicative relations are expressed by a dative or instrumental, v. § 69, V. and VI.).

This apparent anomaly requires explanation. In older Russian, as in the Teutonic languages, there were two forms of adjectival declension, the determinative and the simple.

The simple form, as in most European languages, was inflected almost the same as the noun, an adjective being in a sense only a fuller form of noun capable of all three genders. Thus *Rōmānus* in Latin is exactly like *equus*, horse, *Rōmāna* like *mensa*, and *Rōmānum* like *bellum*; so, too, *ingens* has the same forms as *gens*, and so on. Similarly, in French the adjective *occidental* follows the form of the noun *cheval*, and *occidentale* of any feminine noun. In Latin there exists little but a grammarian's distinction between *bonus*, *bona*, good, masculine and feminine, and *filius*, *filia*, son, daughter.

So, too, in Russian the simple adjective originally followed nominal declensions almost exactly.

But, there being no article, the Old Slav pronoun *ѣ*, he (obsolete in Russian), was compounded with and postponed to the simple form to make the so-called *determinative* form [v. § 35].

Thus as in German we find *guter Mann*, but *der gute Mann*, in older Russian, too, two forms existed. In modern Russian the *determinative* form has swept the simple form out of existence, except (a) in the *nominative* when used *predicatively*, (β) in the *possessives* and *descriptives*, some of which follow the simple inflection, (γ) in rather high-flown archaistic style when the old simple forms are used.

(6) The accentuation of the determinative, possessive and descriptive forms, is constant; that of the simple form is very difficult, as difficult as the nominal forms which it follows. We have seen [§ 25] how the loss of the nominative suffix *ъ, ъ* has confused the rules for accentuation, and [§§ 27 and 29] the slighter variances in the neuters and feminines. All these rules come in to complicate the formation of the predicative adjective.

(7) In modern Russian no instance survives of adjectives in the third declension.

(8) In the eighteenth century, when Lomonósov (1711–1765) created the modern Russian script out of the old Cyrillic, and set hard and fast rules for Russian, the grammarians introduced some unnecessary complications in the spelling of the determinative forms; e.g. *но́вый* new, *ди́кий* wild, for *но́вой*, *ди́кой* (*но́вые* masc. pl., *но́выя* fem. and neut. pl.).

(9) The adjective may acquire a substantival meaning, but is still declined as an adjective.

e.g. <i>городово́й</i>	policeman
<i>портно́й</i>	tailor
<i>насе́комое</i>	insect
<i>столо́вая</i>	dining-room
<i>де́тская</i>	nursery

§ 34. THE SIMPLE, POSSESSIVE AND DESCRIPTIVE ADJECTIVES.

(1) For *reference* this is an example of the simple adjective. These forms are now disused save as stated in § 33 (5).

Dear

	Singular.			Plural.
	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	All genders.
Nom.	до́рогъ	до́рого	дорога́	дороги́
Acc.	Like N. or G.	до́рого	дорогу́	Like N. or G.
Gen.	дорога́		дороги́	дороги́хъ
Dat.	дорогу́		дороги́	дороги́мъ
Instr.	дороги́мъ		дорого́ю	дороги́ми
Loc.	дорого́мъ		дороги́	дороги́хъ

Good

	Singular.			Plural.
	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	All genders.
Nom.	до́бръ	до́бро	до́бра	до́бры
Acc.	Like N. or G.	до́бро	до́бру	Like N. or G.
Gen.	до́бра		до́бры	до́брыхъ
Dat.	до́бру		до́бры	до́брымъ
Instr.	до́брымъ		до́брою	до́брыми
Loc.	до́бромъ		до́бры	до́брыхъ

(2) *The formation of possessive adjectives and examples.*

Possessive adjectives are formed from names in the first and second declensions; those from the first end in -овъ, those from the second in -ынъ, -инъ.

The accentuation is *constant throughout all* the cases. Adjectives in -овъ, -евъ derived from monosyllables generally accent the termination: Пе́тровъ Peter's, Царё́въ the Tsar's. Adjectives in -овъ, -евъ derived from other names, not monosyllables, retain the accent as in the name: e.g. Алексѣ́й, Алексѣ́евъ; Алекса́ндръ, Алекса́ндровъ.

Adjectives in -инъ are similarly declined, and retain the accent of the name.

e.g.	Сáша	(Alexander)	Сáшинъ
	Никíта*	Nikíta	Никíтинъ
	Илѣ́я	Elias	Илѣ́инъ
	Трѡ́ица	Trinity	Трѡ́ицынъ
	сестрá	sister	сестр́инъ
	Царѣ́ица	Tsarítsa	Царѣ́ицынъ
	дѣ́дя	uncle	дѣ́динъ

Note.—Nouns in -ца take -цынъ ; and мужъ husband, братъ brother, господъ Lord, irregularly form мѹжнинъ, брáтнинъ, господень.

The two following examples illustrate the declensions :—

Peter's

	Masc.	<i>Singular.</i> Neut.	Fem.	<i>Plural.</i> All genders.
Nom.	Петрѡ́въ	Петрѡ́во	Петрѡ́ва	Петрѡ́вы
Acc.	Like N. or G.	Петрѡ́во	Петрѡ́ву	Like N. or G.
Gen.	Петрѡ́ва		Петрѡ́вой	Петрѡ́выхъ
Dat.	Петрѡ́ву		Петрѡ́вой	Петрѡ́вымъ
Instr.	Петрѡ́вымъ		Петрѡ́вою	Петрѡ́выми
Loc.	Петрѡ́вомъ		Петрѡ́вой	Петрѡ́выхъ

Lord's

	Masc.	<i>Singular.</i> Neut.	Fem.	<i>Plural.</i> All genders.
Nom.	госпѡ́день	госпѡ́дне	госпѡ́дня	госпѡ́дни
Acc.	Like N. or G.	госпѡ́дне	госпѡ́дню	Like N. or G.
Gen.	госпѡ́дня		госпѡ́дней	госпѡ́днихъ
Dat.	госпѡ́дню		госпѡ́дней	госпѡ́днимъ
Instr.	госпѡ́днимъ		госпѡ́днею	госпѡ́дними
Loc.	госпѡ́днемъ		госпѡ́дней	госпѡ́днихъ

* Νικήτης.

Note that very many family names end in -овъ and -инъ, and are similarly declined, *except* that the locative singular masculine is -ѣ.

e.g. въ Петровомъ письмѣ in Peter's letter, but
я говорѣлъ о Петровѣ I was speaking of
Petróv.

(3) *Formation of descriptive adjectives.*

Most of these adjectives are soft, being formed from nouns by adding -іи to the stem. The nominative singular is, masc. -іи, neut. -ѣ, fem. -я; and the accent is *constant* and *always* that of the noun. The accusative singular feminine is also in -ю.

Otherwise their declension is like that of the soft determinatives. [v. § 35 (2).]

Observe that the rules in § 5 as to mutation of consonants must be applied in the formation of these adjectives.

e.g. волкъ wolf, волчій, волчье, волчья
Богъ god, божій, божье, божья
лиса fox, лисій, лисье, лисья
дѣвица or дѣвица maiden, дѣвчій, дѣвчье,
дѣвчья
пёсъ dog, пёсій, пёсье, пёсья, i.e. пёсья звѣзда
the dog-star

Also дерево wood, деревянный wooden
кожа leather, кожаный of leather

This termination -янный is hard, and is generally applied to words denoting materials.

§ 35. THE DETERMINATIVE ADJECTIVES.

(1) *The scheme and the formation.*

This form of adjective is the most common in Russian, embracing all adjectives except the simpler declensions stated in § 34 (1) and (2).

The paradigms inserted *infra* are to illustrate the application of the rules in § 5 to these adjectives.

A short historical statement will explain away the apparent complications.

In Old Slavonic there was a 3rd person pronoun declined as follows:—

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
Nom.	ѣ	ѣ	ѣ	ѣ	ѣ	ѣ
Acc.	ѣ	ѣ	ю	ѣ	ѣ	ѣ
Gen.	ѣго	ѣго	ѣя	ѣхъ	ѣхъ	ѣхъ
Dat.	ѣмѣ	ѣмѣ	ѣй	ѣмъ	ѣмъ	ѣмъ
Instr.	ѣмъ	ѣмъ	ѣю	ѣми	ѣми	ѣми
Loc.	ѣмъ	ѣмъ	ѣй	ѣхъ	ѣхъ	ѣхъ

By adding this vocalic pronoun on to the simple adjectival forms, like a postponed article, a *determinative* form was obtained, which in the older language had a slightly different meaning, such as is given in English by the use of the definite article.

In modern Russian the simple form is obsolete in the Nom., but a survey of the paradigm of the full adjective will show where the fusion has taken place, e.g. молодъ, молодой, i.e. молод'и, and so on.

Remember that in Russian the *r* of the genitive singular is sounded в. [v. § 5 (3) (3).]

<i>Singular.</i>						<i>Plural.</i>					
Masc.		Neut.		Fem.		Masc.		Neut.		Fem.	
Hard	Soft*	Hard	Soft	Hard	Soft	Hard	Soft	Hard	Soft	Hard	Soft
N. ый	ий	ое	ее	ая	яя	ые	ие	ья	ія	ья	ія
ой											
accented											
A. As N or G.		ое	ее	ую	юю	N. or G.		Nom.		N. or G.	
Masc. and Neut.								All genders.			
G. аго		яго		ой	ей			ыхъ		ихъ	
ого											
accented											
D. ому		ему		ой	ей			ымъ		имъ	
I. ымъ		имъ		ою†	ею			ыми		ими	
L. омъ		емъ		ой	ей			ыхъ		ехъ	

The eighteenth century grammarians are responsible for two unnecessary complications.

(i) The invariable nom. sing. masc. hard should be -ой, as ѣ when sounded in Russian becomes о. [v. § 32, I.]

But it was decreed that the spelling should be -ой, only when the termination was accented; otherwise -ый.

Consequently in guttural stems [v. § 5 (3)] this -ый had to be spelled -ій.

e.g. но́вый new, дѣ́кій wild

But in such cases дѣ́кій and similar words are still sounded d'ikǎi, as though spelt дѣ́кой; whereas дѣ́кіе, where the *i* is there of right, is pronounced d'ikiyě.

* There are no soft adjectives accented on the termination except palatal stems (nominally hard).

† Commonly contracted, v. § 28 (2).

(ii) The only plural nominative form *should* be -е. The -я is purely orthographic, and in all cases the e and the я in -ья, -ье, -ья, -ые, -ия, -ие are sounded alike, viz. yě.

e.g. дóбрыя dóbryĭě, худы́я (худóй bad) khudyĭě

(iii) When the termination is accented, it is usual to write -óro and not -aro.

e.g. хра́брого of the brave man (khrábrəvə); but
чужо́го of the strange man (čuzóvə).

TABLE OF ADJECTIVES.

<i>Hard.</i>		Full form.		Short form.
	Masc.	-ый	мѣлый	мѣлъ gentle
	Neut.	-ое	мѣлое	мѣло
	Fem.	-ая	мѣлая	мѣла
<i>Soft.</i>	Masc.	-ій	сѣвій	сѣнь blue
	Neut.	-ее	сѣнее	сѣне
	Fem.	-ія	сѣвія	сѣія

(2) Examples of the determinative adjective.

<i>Singular.</i>	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
Nom.	бѣлый	бѣлое	бѣлая
Acc.	N. or G.	бѣлое	бѣлую
Gen.	бѣлаго		бѣлой
Dat.	бѣлому		бѣлой
Instr.	бѣлымъ		бѣлою
Loc.	бѣломъ		бѣлой
<i>Plural.</i>			
Nom.	бѣлые	бѣлыя	бѣлыя
Acc.	N. or G.	бѣлыя	N. or G.
Gen.	бѣлыхъ		
Dat.	бѣлымъ		
Instr.	бѣлыми		
Loc.	бѣлыхъ		
бѣлъ, бѣла́, бѣло, бѣлы white.			

<i>Singular.</i>			
	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
Nom.	прямóй	прямóе	прямáя
Acc.	N. or G.	прямóе	прямúю
Gen.	прямóю		прямóй
Dat.	прямóму		прямóй
Instr.	прямýмъ		прямóю
Loc.	прямóмъ		прямóй

<i>Plural.</i>			
	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
Nom.	прямýе	прямýя	прямýя
Acc.	N. or G.	прямýя	N. or G.
Gen.	прямýхъ		
Dat.	прямýмъ		
Instr.	прямýми		
Loc.	прямýхъ		

прямъ, прямá, прямо, прýмы upright.

<i>Singular.</i>			
	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
Nom.	с́нйй	с́нее	с́няя
Acc.	N. or G.	с́нее	с́нюю
Gen.	с́нюю		с́ней
Dat.	с́нему		с́ней
Instr.	с́нимъ		с́нею
Loc.	с́немъ		с́ней

<i>Plural.</i>			
	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
Nom.	с́ние	с́нія	с́нія
Acc.	N. or G.	с́нія	N. or G.
Gen.	с́нихъ		
Dat.	с́нимъ		
Instr.	с́ними		
Loc.	с́нихъ		

снвъ, снйá, с́не, с́ни blue

<i>Singular.</i>	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
Nom.	барáній	барáнье	барáнья
Acc.	N. or G.	барáнье	барáнью
Gen.	барáньяю		барáньей
Dat.	барáньему		барáньей
Instr.	барáньимъ		барáньею
Loc.	барáньемъ		барáньей

<i>Plural.</i>	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
Nom.	барáньи	барáньи	барáньи
Acc.	N. or G.	барáньи	N. or G.
Gen.	барáньихъ		
Dat.	барáньимъ		
Instr.	барáньими		
Loc.	барáньихъ		

барáній, барáнья, барáнье, барáньи of a ram [v. § 34 (3)].

<i>Singular.</i>	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
Nom.	вели́кій	вели́кое	вели́кая
Acc.	N. or G.	вели́кое	вели́кую
Gen.	вели́каю		вели́кой
Dat.	вели́кому		вели́кой
Instr.	вели́кимъ		вели́кою
Loc.	вели́комъ		вели́кой

<i>Plural.</i>	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
Nom.	вели́кіе	вели́кія	
Acc.	N. or G.	вели́кія	N. or G.
Gen.	вели́кихъ		
Dat.	вели́кимъ		
Instr.	вели́кими		
Loc.	вели́кихъ		

вели́къ, вели́ка, вели́ко, вели́кі great.

<i>Singular.</i>	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
Nom.	большóй	большóе	большáя
Acc.	N. or G.	большóе	большúю
Gen.	большóю		большóй
Dat.	большóму		большóй
Instr.	большúмъ		большóю
Loc.	большóмъ		большóй

<i>Plural.</i>	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
Nom.	большíе	большíя	
Acc.	N. or G.	большíя	N. or G.
Gen.		большúхъ	
Dat.		большúмъ	
Instr.		большúми	
Loc.		большúхъ	

Not used predicatively. большóй, big, large.
Thus: чужóй, чужь, чúже, чужá, чúжи strange.

<i>Singular.</i>	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
Nom.	свѣжíй	свѣжее	свѣжáя
Acc.	N. or G.	свѣжее	свѣжúю
Gen.	свѣжáго*		свѣжей
Dat.	свѣжему		свѣжей
Instr.	свѣжимъ		свѣжею
Loc.	свѣжемъ		свѣжей

<i>Plural.</i>	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
Nom.	свѣжíе	свѣжíя	
Acc.	N. or G.	свѣжíя	N. or G.
Gen.		свѣжихъ	
Dat.		свѣжимъ	
Instr.		свѣжими	
Loc.		свѣжихъ	

свѣжь, свѣжá, свѣжó, свѣжí fresh. Thus: хорóшій, хорóшь, хорóшó, хорóшá, хорóшí excellent.

* Sounded svěživъ.

§ 36. THE FORMATION OF THE PREDICATIVES.

Consult § 32 regarding the “insertion” of *o* and *e* to avoid an accumulation of final consonants.

(1) The following determinative adjectives have *no special* predicative form, and predicatively the full form must be used:—

(a) All adjectives in *-скій*, e.g. *а́нглійскій* English, *фра́нцу́зскій* French, *ру́сскій* Russian, *горо́дско́й* municipal, etc.

(β) *большо́й* big (physically): *-вели́къ* is used, e.g. *э́тотъ му́жъ вели́къ* this man is tall; but *э́тотъ до́мъ большо́й*, this house is big.

(γ) Adjectives denoting materials in *-янный*, e.g. *дере́вянный* wooden, *сере́брянный* silver, etc., and the descriptive adjectives, such as *бара́ний* of a ram, v. § 34 (3).

(2) The following adjectives are *only* used in the predicative form: *ра́дъ* glad, *гору́дъ* skilful.

e.g. *я́ о́чень ра́дъ* I am very glad, *она́ на всё гору́да* she is clever in everything.

(3) *Possessives* [v. § 34 (2)] are *only* declined with the simple forms.

Possessives in *-овъ* never shift their accent.

Possessives in *-инъ* are thus accented: *сестри́нь*, *сестри́на*, *сестри́но*, *сестри́ны*, as *predicatives*.

(4) All other adjectives have both forms, and the predicative has to be deduced from the determinative.

In polysyllabic derivative adjectives there is generally no change of accent.

e.g. мѹжественный masculine, мѹжественъ, мѹжественна, мѹжественно

But in simpler original adjectives there is practically no rule but experience. A few instances may be given.

e.g. (i) нѹвый new, новъ, новá, нѹво, нѹвы

Thus, too, бѹдръ gay, бѹстръ swift, великъ big, гордъ proud, твердъ hard, тихъ still, толстъ fat, старъ old, цѣлъ whole, чистъ clean. [v. § 32, II.]

Thus, too:—

тѣмный dark, тѣмень, темна́, темно́, темны́
красный red, красенъ, красна́, красно́, красны́
тѣплый hot, тѣпель, тепла́, тепло́, теплы́
чѣрный black, чѣренъ, черна́, черно́, черны́

(ii) го́лый naked, голъ, гола́, голо́, голы́

Thus, too, вы́сокъ lofty, далѣкъ far, тяжѣлъ heavy, бѣ́лый white, ширѹкъ far.

e.g. далѣ́кій, далѣ́къ, далека́, далеко́, далѣ́ки

(iii) во́льный free, волѣнъ, вольна́, вольно́, вольны́

Thus, too, лё́гкий light (in weight), лё́гокъ, легка́, легко́, легки́; си́льный powerful, ў́мный sensible.

(iv) су́хой dry, сухá, сѹхо, сухи́

Thus, too, бѹсь barefooted, глухъ deaf, гниль foul, дѹрогъ dear, живъ alive, мо́лодь young, нагъ naked, нѣ́мъ dumb, плохъ poorly, слѣ́пъ blind, хромъ lame, etc.; больно́й sick, бо́ленъ, больна́, бо́льно, больны́; честно́й or чѣ́стный honest, чѣ́стенъ, честна́, чѣ́ство, чѣ́стны́.

§ 37. THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.—*Formation.*

(1) The Russian adjective has two degrees of comparison, comparative and superlative.

The comparative is in two forms: uninflected, e.g. бо́лѣ радъ, from радъ glad; inflected, e.g. глѹ́бже deeper, from глѹбóкій.

The inflected comparative has a predicative and determinative form, e.g. бѣлѣе, бѣлѣ́йшій whiter.

It is formed from the positive in two ways—by adding -ѣе, -ѣ́йшій to the stem, the accent generally shifting to the termination; or by adding -ѣе, -ѣ́йшій to the stem, the accent remaining on the radical syllable.

-ѣе, -ѣ́йшій, has become the *regular* form.

When adding either termination, -ѣе or -ѣе, the rules for the mutation of consonants [v. § 5] must be strictly observed, and should be re-perused before the student proceeds any further with this section. In addition, he should remember [v. § 2 (3)] that in older Russian ѣ had a value approximating to я, and therefore, just as к, г, х + я in modern Russian make ча, жа, ша, so, too, in the comparatives к, г, х + -ѣе, -ѣ́йшій, make чайшій, жайшій, шайшій.

Similarly, ск or ст + -ѣ́йшій or -ѣе make -ще, -щайшій, e.g. чѣ́стый pure, чѣ́ще, чѣ́щайшій; плóскій flat, плóщайшій.

(2) No inflections for the superlative exist.

The comparative form is used, or the positive with suitable pronouns or adverbs. So, too, “beautiful,” “content” in English have no inflected degrees of comparison.

In some cases, where the shorter comparative is used, the longer form is reserved as a superlative.

e.g. **высо́кій** high, **вы́ше**, **вы́шій**; superlative **высоча́йшій**.

(3) The substitutes for the superlative are :—

(a) The prefixing of **наи-** to the positive or comparative.

e.g. **Вотъ наи-луч́шій примѣръ.**

This is the best example.

Это наи-мѣньшая сума́.

This is the least sum.

(β) The prefixing of **самый**, self, to the positive or comparative.

e.g. **Это са́мая интере́сная кни́га изъ всѣхъ мно́ю прочи́танныхъ.**

This is the most interesting book of those
I have read.

Нашъ домъ са́мый краси́вый въ дере́внѣ.

Our home is the prettiest in the village.

(γ) The addition of a form of **весь**, all, to the comparative, either **всего́** or **всѣхъ**.

e.g. **Эта кни́га интере́снѣе всѣхъ кото́рыя я прочи́талъ.**

This book is the most interesting of any
I have read.

Вашъ совѣ́тъ полѣзньѣе всѣхъ.

Your advice is the best.

- (δ) The absolute superlative, as in English, is indicated by the positive with such words as *очень* very, etc.

e.g. *Обѣдъ былъ очень вкусенъ.*

The dinner was very tasty.

- (ε) The superlative also can be formed by using—*въ высшей стѣпени* in the highest degree.

e.g. *Онъ въ высшей стѣпени великодушенъ.*

He is most generous.

§ 38. THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.—*Rules.*

I. The uninflected form, i.e. with *болѣе* more, is used:—

- (a) With adjectives like *радъ* glad.

- (β) At discretion with lengthy adjectives, e.g. *болѣе глубокий* deeper.

- (γ) When there is a comparison of two adjectives.

e.g. *Рѣка Москвѣ болѣе широка нежели глубока.*

The river Moscow is broader than it is deep.

- (δ) With adjectives (such as participles, derivative words, etc.), which it would be inconvenient to lengthen any more.

e.g. *Никогда не видѣла своего мужа болѣе оскорбленнымъ.*

She had never seen her husband more grieved.

У него болѣе живой умъ.

He has a keener mind.

- (ε) Adjectives ending in *-скій*, *-скій*.

II. Only four adjectives have a simple inflected superlative.

e.g. низкій	low	нижайшій
высокій	high	высочайшій
глубокій	deep	глубочайшій
малый	small	малѣйшій
		(better най-мѣньше)

III. Adjectives in -сый, -жій, -зый, -чій, and many in -кій, -гій, have no *declinable* comparative.

e.g. лысый	bald	лысѣ
свѣжій	fresh	свѣжѣ
горячій	warm	горячѣ

The reason probably is that where the regular form -ѣ, -ѣйшій is used, the combination of sibilants would be too heavy, e.g. лышайшій, свѣжайшій, горячайшій, and the want is supplied in other ways; *v.* next subdivision.

IV. The indeclinable comparative with the prefix по- can be used in concord with a noun.

e.g. Я купилъ шляпу побольше.

I have bought a larger hat.

When the object of comparison is stated, the prefix по- has a diminutive sense.

e.g. Ваша лошадь по-быстрѣ Пвановой.

Your horse is a little quicker than that of Iván.

V. There are two methods of translating “than” :—

- (1) The use of *чѣмъ*, or rarely *нѣжели* : when a phrase follows the comparison.

e.g. *Этотъ урокъ легче чѣмъ (нѣжели) мы думали.*
This lesson is easier than we thought.

- (2) When the object of comparison is a noun, the noun may be in the genitive.

e.g. *Юрійъ умнѣе своего брата Кузьмы.*
George is more sensible than his brother Kuźmá.

§ 39. THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

Examples.

I. The regular form of comparison is *-ѣе*, *-ѣйшій*, predicative indeclinable and declinable.

e.g. *любезный* amiable, *любезнѣе*, *любезнѣйшій*
-ѣе is often abbreviated to *-ѣй*.

When the positive cannot in *any* part of its declension throw the accent on to the ending, the original accentuation is retained.

e.g. *справедливый* just, *справедливѣе*, *справедливѣйшій*

II. Another very common form is *-ле*, *-льшій*, the adjective retaining its original accent.

This is nearly always used when the positive drops a suffix, e.g. *-ный*, *-кій*, and the comparative termination is attached to the root.

With a very few adjectives the predicative neuter -*ме*, of the declinable form -*и́и*, is used alternatively with -*е*.

(a) Where the suffix of the positive is retained :—

e.g.	крѣпкій	powerful	крѣ́че	крѣ́пчайші́й
	лёгкій	light (in weight)	лё́гче	ле́гчайші́й
	мѣлкій	small	мѣ́льче	ме́льчайші́й
	бойкій	brisk	бои́чѣ	(a modern form)
	лѳвкій	clever	ло́вчѣ	
	го́рькій	bitter	го́рше	

(b) Where the suffix of the positive is dropped in the undeclined comparative, but generally retained in the determinative :—

e.g.	высо́кій	high	вы́ше	вы́сшій*	высо́чайші́й
	глубо́кій	deep	глуб́же		глубо́чайші́й
	ни́зкій	low	ни́же	ни́зшій	ни́жайші́й
	позд́ній*	late	поз́же*		позд́нѣ́йші́й
	близ́кій	near	бли́же		бли́жайші́й
	у́зкій	narrow	у́же		
	рѣ́дкій	rare	рѣ́же		рѣ́дчайші́й
	сла́дкій	sweet	сла́ще†		сла́дчайші́й
	кро́ткій	gentle	[кро́че]‡		крат́чайші́й
	коро́ткій	short	коро́че		крат́чайші́й
	то́нкій	thin	то́вьше		тон́чайші́й
	широ́кій	broad	ши́ре		широ́чайші́й
	далё́кій	far	да́льше		да́льнѣ́йші́й

* V. § 4 (7) and (9).

† A Church Slav mutation from *тъ*.

‡ More usually *бо́лье кро́ткій*.

(c) When the positive is not altered, there being no suffix :—

e.g. твёрдый	hard	твёрже	твёрдѣйшій
богатый	rich	{ богаче богатѣе }	богатѣйшій
худой	bad, lean	{ хуже (bad) худѣе (lean) }	худшій худѣйшій
плоскій	flat	плосче	
тихий	quiet	тише	тишайшій
строгий	stern	строже	строжайшій
дорогой	dear	дороже	дражайшій
молодой	young	моложе	младшій
старый	old	старше	старшій
крутой	steep	круче	крутѣйшій
дешёвый	cheap	дешевле	
пустой	{ desolate empty }	пуще пустѣе	пущій пустѣйшій
чистый	clean	чище	чистѣйшій

It will be observed that in modern Russian the mutations mostly only occur in the uninflected form of the comparative.

Note, too—

долгий long, больше (irregular, due to analogy of больше)
далёкий far, дальше *or* далѣе, дальнѣйшій (from дальный)
рано (adverb) early, раньше *or* ранѣе

With these few exceptions the comparison of the adjective is regular; and all derivative adjectives, e.g. знаменитый famous, proceed in accordance with the rule, знаменитѣе, знаменитѣйшій.

So, too, сердитый angry.

The inflected comparative of such words is rarely used; the superlative replaced, as stated in § 37 (3).

III. The following adjectives have no positive:—

e.g. *лучше, лучший* better; *меньше* less; *меньше, меньший* smaller; *больше* more; *больше, больший* bigger.

Observe the distinction:—

<i>меньшой</i> junior	<i>большой</i> big
<i>меньший</i> smaller	<i>большый</i> bigger

Хороший and *добрый* are used as positives for *лучше*; but *добрѣ, добрый* also exist; also *малый* as a positive for *меньше*; and *великий* and *большой* for *больше, больше*.

THE PRONOUN.

§ 40 (1). PRELIMINARY REMARKS ON THE PRONOUNS.

The pronouns in Russian present very little difficulty.

Observe (1) in the pronouns the genitive in -го is written -оро, -еро, and pronounced and accented *аво, ево*. The dative in -му is also oxytone.

(2) Pronominal adjectives (such as *который, такой*) are declined exactly like ordinary adjectives [v. § 35 (2)].

(3) It will be observed that pronouns, though they are hard stems, take a *soft* plural, e.g. *самъ* self, *сами*.

The reason of this is that in Old Russian the nominative and accusative plural masculine were *и* and *ы*. In Russian the old feminine plural forms in *ы* have superseded the masculine; but the same survival of the old nominative is found in the old participles in -лъ, now used as the past tense, e.g. *былъ, были*.

§ 40 (2). TABLE OF RUSSIAN PRONOUNS AND ADVERBS.

Interrogative	кто who?	что what?	кой* which?	чей whose?	какъ how?	гдѣ where?	куда whither?	откуда whence?	какой what sort?	когда when?	почему† why?	сколько how much?
Relative	кто	что	кой*	чей	какъ якъ*	гдѣ	куда	откуда	какой	когда	почему	сколько
Demonstrative (remote)	тотъ	то	свой† его ея§	его ея§ ихъ	такъ	тамъ	туда	оттуда	такой таковой	тогда	потому	столько
Demonstrative (near)	этотъ	это			этакъ	здѣсь			этакій (эдакій)			
Demonstrative (remote)	о́ный	о́но										
Demonstrative (near)	сей	сіе сѣ			сякъ*		сюда	отсюда отсюду				
Universals	ка́ждый every весь all всѣ́кій everyone	всѣ			всѣ́ такі anyway	вездѣ повсюду every- where		отовсюду	всякій every	всегда always		

Personal	я ты онъ она оно мы вы они ¶ онѣ ¶	мои твои его ея свой † нашъ вашъ ихъ ** свой †	какъ- нибудь какъ-то никуда	кое-гдѣ гдѣ-то гдѣ- нибудь	никуда- то никуда никуда	откуда- то никуда никуда	нѣ- который какой* никогда	нѣ- сколько
Reflexive	себя †							
Indefinite	нѣкто somebody одни	нѣкій a certain						
Negative	никто	ничей	никакъ	нигдѣ	никуда	ни- откуда	никакой	нискольکو
Identity	самъ самый self тотъ-же этотъ-же the same		такъ-же этакъ- же	здѣсь-же тамъ-же	туда-же сюда-же	оттуда- же отсюда- же	такой- же этакой- же	
Difference	другой иной инойто прочіе		иначе иначе	иногда иногда	прямо прямо		иногда иногда иногда	

* Obsolete. † Or with any suitable preposition, e.g. причѣвъ. ‡ Reflexive for all persons. § Genitives, cf. Latin *ejus*.
 ¶ то́лько, like Latin *tantum*, means "only." ¶ Both sounded *онѣ*. ** *ихній* vulgar.

§ 41. EXAMPLES OF THE PRONOUNS.

I. *The Interrogative* (singular and plural).

N. V.	кто (khtó)	for persons	что (štó)	for things
Acc.	кого́ (kavó)	„ „	что	„ „
Gen.	кого́	„ „	чего́ (čivó)	„ „
Dat.	кому́	„ „	чему́	„ „
Instr.	ке́мъ	„ „	че́мъ	„ „
Loc.	комъ	„ „	че́мъ	„ „

ко́тoрый (which of several?) and ка́ко́й (of what sort?) are declined adjectivally.

ко́й which?

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	All genders.
Nom.	ко́й	ко́е	ко́я	ко́и
Acc.	N. or G.	ко́е	ко́ю	N. or G.
Gen.	ко́его*		ко́ей	ко́ихъ
Dat.	ко́ему		ко́ей	ко́имъ
Instr.	ко́имъ		ко́ею	ко́ими
Loc.	ко́емъ		ко́ей	ко́ихъ

че́й whose?

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	All genders.
Nom.	че́й	че́ё	че́я	че́и
Acc.	N. or G.	че́ё	че́ю	N. or G.
Gen.	че́его́ (čivó)		че́ей	че́ихъ
Dat.	че́ему́		че́ей	че́имъ
Instr.	че́имъ		че́ею	че́ими
Loc.	че́емъ		че́ей	че́ихъ

* Sounded kóyivə.

Remarks.—(1) *кой* is practically disused except in poetry, and a few proverbs.

(2) *сѣ́лько* is the only other declinable interrogative form.

Nom. Voc. Acc.	сѣ́лько
Gen. Loc.	сѣ́лькѣхъ
Dat.	сѣ́лькѣмъ
Instr.	сѣ́лькѣми

стѣ́лько is similarly declined.

Observe.—In the nominative and accusative *сѣ́лько* is a noun governing the genitive plural; in other cases an adjective.

e.g. *Сѣ́лько книгъ вы нашли?*

How many books have you found?

Я самъ не знаю сѣ́лькими страна́ми я владѣ́ю.

I do not myself know of how many countries

I am the master.

II. *Relatives.*

These forms are now identical with the interrogatives. But, except in proverbs and poetry, *кто* and *что* are disused, *ко́торый* replacing them as relatives.

кто and *что* are scarcely ever used in strict apposition.

e.g. *Я встрѣ́тилъ Ива́на ко́торому я обѣща́лъ мою ло́шадь.*

I met John to whom I had promised my horse.

But they are commonly employed in distributive phrases *where the relative precedes*.

e.g. Кто бы ни появлялся у окна, въ тогó немедленно стрѣляли.

Whoever appeared at a window, (at him) they instantly shot.

Что бы вы ни дѣляли, вы этимъ горю не помóжете.
Whatever you do, you will not remedy the sorrow thereby.

III. *Demonstratives.*

тотъ that

<i>Sing.</i>	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	<i>Plural.</i> All genders.
Nom.	тотъ	то	та	тѣ
Acc.	N. or G.	то	ту	N. or G.
Gen.	тогó*		той	тѣхъ
Dat.	тому́		той	тѣмъ
Instr.	тѣмъ		тою	тѣми
Loc.	томъ		той	тѣхъ

этотъ this

<i>Sing.</i>	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	<i>Plural.</i> All genders.
Nom.	этотъ	это	эта	эти
Acc.	N. or G.	это	эту	N. or G.
Gen.	этого		этой	этихъ
Dat.	этому		этой	этимъ
Instr.	этимъ		этою	этими
Loc.	этомъ		этой	этихъ

о́ный that

<i>Sing.</i>	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom.				о́ные, о́ныя
Acc.	Like any hard adjective			о́ныхъ
Gen.	in -ый			о́ныхъ
Dat.				о́нымъ
Instr.				о́ными
Loc.				о́ныхъ

* Sounded tavó.

сей this

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	All genders.
Nom.	сей	сіе сѣ	сіѧ	сіи
Acc.	N. or G.	сіе сѣ	сію	N. or G.
Gen.	сего*		сей	сихъ
Dat.	семѹ		сей	симъ
Instr.	симъ		сею	ими
Loc.	сѣмъ		сей	сихъ

Consult § 2 (3).

All the rest of the declinable pronouns on the demonstrative lines in the table follow the regular forms of the determinative adjectives without variation. e.g. *тако́й, таковóй* such as that; *э́такі́й* such as this, etc.

Remarks.—Practically only *тотъ* and *этотъ* are used in modern Russian. *о́ный* is found in legal documents, and *сей* in set phrases; e.g. *сего́дня* (*śivód'nya*) to-day, *сейча́съ* in a minute, *до сихъ* *поръ* up to the present, *сію мину́ту* this very minute.

IV. *Universal Pronouns.*

всѧ́кій of all sorts, and *ка́ждый* each, are declined like the determinative adjectives.

весь, all, drops the vowel "e" [v. § 32, I].

	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	All genders.
Nom.	весь	всѣ	вся	всѣ
Acc.	N. or G.	всѣ	всю	N. or G.
Gen.	всего†		всей	всѣхъ
Dat.	всемѹ		всей	всѣмъ
Instr.	всѣмъ		всею	всѣми
Loc.	всѣмъ		всей	всѣхъ

* Sounded *śivó*.

† Sounded *śśivó*.

V. *Personal Pronouns and Possessives.**Singular.*

	1st pers.	2nd pers.	3rd pers.			Reflexive.
			Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	
Nom.	я	ты	онъ	оно́	она́	—
Acc.	меня́	тебѣ́	его́*	её	её	себѣ́
Gen.	меня́	тебѣ́	его́	ея́ †	ея́ †	себѣ́
Dat.	мнѣ́	тебѣ́	ему́	ей	ей	себѣ́
Instr.	мно́ю	тобо́ю	имъ	ею	ею	собо́ю
	мно́й	тобо́й				собо́й
Loc.	мнѣ́	тебѣ́	ёмъ	ей	ей	себѣ́

Plural.

	мы́	вы́	они́	они́	они́ ‡	
Nom.	мы́	вы́	они́	они́	они́ ‡	
A.G.L.	насъ	васъ		ихъ		As
Dat.	намъ	вамъ		имъ		singular.
Instr.	на́ми	ва́ми		ими́		

The close similarity of some of these forms with the Latin pronouns will strike the student, e.g. *tibi* тебѣ́, *sibi* себѣ́.

Refer back to § 2 (3) and § 35 (1).

The possessives мой, твой, свой are declined like кой [v. § 41, I.], but accent the last syllable of the terminations uniformly; e.g. моё, мой, моёй, моего́, моему́, мой, etc.

нашъ our, and вашъ your, are declined alike, viz. :

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	All genders.
Nom.	нашъ	на́ше	на́ша	на́ши
Acc.	N. or G.	на́ше	на́шу	N. or G.
Gen.	на́шего		на́шей	на́шихъ
Dat.	на́шему		на́шей	на́шимъ
Instr.	на́шимъ		на́шею	на́шими
Loc.	на́шемъ		на́шей	на́шихъ

* Sounded yivó, yim, etc. † Commonly sounded like acc. её.

‡ Sounded like они́.

Remarks.—(1) *свои́* and *себе́я* always refer back to the subject, *whatever the person*.

e.g. *Вы про́дали свою́ честь.*

You have sold your honour.

The 3rd person pronouns when they are *not* reflexive are the genitives *его́*, *ея́*, *ихъ*.

e.g. *Мнѣ сказа́ли что купе́цъ уже́ про́далъ его́ това́ры.*

They told me that the merchant has already sold his (somebody else's) goods.

In vulgar speech *ихни́и* is used for *ихъ* their.

When *себе́я* is attached to reflexive or passive verbs it takes the shortened form *ся* (*sounded* *ca*) after consonants, *сь* after vowels.

In older Russian all the pronouns had abbreviated enclitic forms [cf. French “*moi*,” “*me*,” etc.], viz. *мя*, *ти*, *ся* for *меня*, *тебя*, *себя*; *ми*, *ти*, *си* for *мнѣ*, *тебѣ*, *себѣ*. Of these forms only *ся* survives.

e.g. *Въ отча́яніи плѣ́нникъ заколо́лъ себе́я.*

In despair the prisoner stabbed himself (reflexive).

Стыжу́сь это́го.

I am ashamed of this (a reflexive verb).

Ча́шка разби́лась.

The cup was smashed (a passive).

(2) When *его́*, *ему́*, *ея́*, *её*, *ихъ*, *имъ*, *ими*, *ей*, *ёю*, *ёмъ* are governed by *any* preposition, the letter *и* is prefixed to them.

e.g. *къ нему́* to him (sound *knemú*)

въ ней in her (sound *vnéi*)

про́тивъ нихъ against them

у него́ with him [*chez lui*]
 съ ни́ми with them (sound sními)
 бли́зь нея́ near her
 на него́ against him (sound nańivó)
 на немъ on it (sound nanyóm)

But его́ ра́ди for his sake (the preposition follows)
 о́коло его́ до́ма near his house
 подъ ихъ вла́стью under their power, etc.

In these two instances *eró* and *ихъ* are possessive pronouns, not governed by the preposition.

(3) As in the nouns and adjectives, the instrumental singular feminine -ою, -ею, is often shortened to -оѣ, -еѣ.

(4) As the verbs mostly have full personal inflections, the pronouns are not added except for emphasis.

e.g. кля́немъ	we swear
слы́шу	I hear
понима́ешь?	do you understand?

VI. *The Indefinite Pronouns.*

These are formed, as will be seen in the table in various ways, by prefixes and suffixes; cf. English who, whoever, whoso, whosoever.

(1) Prefixing *нѣ́-* accented.

(2) Adding *нибу́дь* (i.e. as it may be, from *бу́дь*, imperative of *бы́ть*). [v. § 57, II. and § 82, III.]

(3) Prefixing *ко́е-* with a *distributive* sense.

e.g. гдѣ́-ни-бу́дь	somewhere or other
ко́е-гдѣ́	here and there
ко́е-кто́	various people (say)

But нѣ́которые some people (say)

(4) Adding -то. This suffix may be used with nouns as well, and gives an ironic or vague sense.

e.g. человѣкъ-то	that kind of man
какой-то	some sort or other
кто-то	somebody you know who

VII. *The Negative Pronouns.*

These are formed by prefixing **ни-** *nor*.

When declined with prepositions the compound breaks up, and the preposition precedes the pronoun immediately.

e.g. ни на когó	against no one
ни на какомъ мѣстѣ	not on any place

In Russian a negative pronoun requires a negative verb, and, contrary to modern English practice, a double negative affirms the negative, and does not destroy it.

e.g. Никогдá не было войны похóжей на тепѣрешнюю.
Never was there a war like the present war.

Я нигдѣ не видѣлъ вáшего брата.

I could not see your brother anywhere.

But consult § 85.

VIII. *The Pronouns of Identity.*

(1) By affixing -же to any demonstrative, identity is implied.

e.g. эготъ-же	the same as this
такой-же	the same sort as that

(2) The words **самъ** and **самый**.

Самъ means "self"; as in English, I myself я **самъ**.

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	All genders.
Nom.	самъ	самó	самá	самѣ
Acc.	самогó	самó	самý†	N. or G.
Gen.	самогó*		самой	самѣхъ
Dat.	самомý		самой	самѣмъ
Instr.	самѣмъ		самóю	самѣми
Loc.	самómъ		самой	самѣхъ

As regards the soft plural самѣ, cf. § 40 (1) (3). It has been carried all through.

Самѣй means “the same,” and is declined like a regular determinative adjective.

For its use to form the superlative, v. § 37 (3).

IX. *The Pronouns of Difference.*

The meanings of другой and иной should be marked. другой is “other,” Latin *alius*, Greek ἄλλος, i.e. anything indeterminate, not what is being thought of. иной is “some other,” Latin *ceteri*, Greek ἕτεροι, a more or less determinate object.

e.g. Нѣкоторые этого не мóгутъ понять.

Some cannot grasp this (fact).

Иные мóгутъ подýмать что онъ сошѣлъ съ умá.

Some (*quidam*, certain people) may think he has gone mad.

Однѣ, однѣ [v. § 2 (3)], the plural of одинъ one, also means “some”; cf. English, the one says, the other . . .

So, too, иногда sometimes, from time to time (definite)

нѣкогда sometimes (uncertain)

когда-то at some time or other (indeterminate)

прóчие, прóчія means “the rest,” “the remainder.”

In the singular it occurs in the phrase:—

въ прóчемъ for the rest (of the argument, etc.).

Conjugations.

I.

Infín. in -тъ, -ать, -ять
Pres. -у, -ешь ... -уть

II.

Infín. in -нуть
Pres. -ну, -нешь ... -нутъ

Guttural roots, infín. in -чь
Nasal roots, infín. in -ять
Sibilant roots, infín. in -сть, -снѣ
Liquid roots, infín. in -ереть, -есть
Dental roots, infín. in -сть, -снѣ
Roots in -в
Consonantal roots with suffixal "а" in infín. and past tense

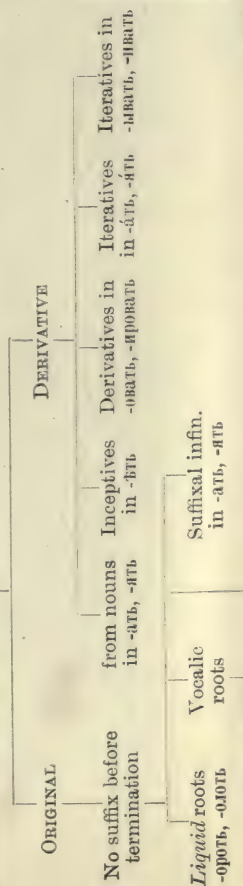
"Instantaneous" verbs Inchoative verbs transitive, intransitive, -ну in past tense stem in past tense
past part. pass. in -т

III.

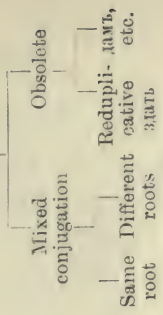
Infín. in -тъ, -ать, -ѣтъ
Pres. -ю, -ешь, -еть ... -ють

IV.

Infín. in -ѣтъ, -итъ
Pres. -ю, -ишь, -итъ ... -ятъ



ANOMALOUS



Verbal noun and past part. pass. in -т

а н у ѣ ы

Originals in -овать, -евать

ORIGINALS

DERIVATIVES

in -итъ, causatives and others
in -ать, -ѣтъ, -итъ, -ѣтъ

THE VERB.

§ 42 (2). PRELIMINARY OBSERVATIONS.

The Parts of the Russian Verb.

(i) The Russian verb presents little difficulty in comparison with many other modern languages. As was remarked in § 10, the forms of conjugation are very much reduced. They are :—

- (1) The infinitive.
- (2) A fully conjugated present tense, used in perfective verbs as the future.
- (3) A past tense consisting of an old participle in -лъ, with the personal pronouns, the copula, as usual in Russian, being omitted.
- (4) An imperative formed directly from the present tense.
- (5) A present “gerundive”* active in -я, and present participle in -ущій or -ящій.
- (6) A past participle active in -вшій, and a past gerundive* in -въ or -вшій.

These last-named forms are comparable with the predicatives and determinatives of the comparative, and originate in the same way. In older Russian *ши* was a feminine suffix of certain adjectives.

(7) A present participle passive in -емый, and

(8) A past participle passive in -тый or -ный.

The participles are all fully declined like ordinary adjectives.

(9) A verbal noun in -ие.

The functions of these parts are more fully discussed in the Syntax, § 88 and 89.

* This so-called “gerundive” is merely an indeclinable participle, only used in agreement with the subject of the sentence.

The Deficiencies and the "Aspects" (вѣды).

(ii) Thus in Russian there is *no* conjunctive, only one conjugated tense, only one so-called past "tense" to express imperfects, preterites, perfects, pluperfects, etc. The future imperfective is formed by a compound tense, the infinitive with бѣды, one of the forms of бѣть to be.

The obvious deficiencies are supplemented by the *aspects* of the Russian verb.

This subject cannot at present be approached; it may be briefly explained. [v. §§ 58 and 92.]

In English, "I do," "I am doing," "I was doing," "I did," "I used to do," "I *do* do," "I have done," all define the nature of the act; e.g. "I am doing" is the continuous conjugation; "I used to do" the habitual; "I have done" marks the completion or perfective aspect, and so on.

If the reader knows any Latin, and can imagine Latin reduced to one tense, but converting the other tenses into separate conjugations with new infinitives to match, he will understand what has happened in Russian. Old Russian had a far fuller complement of tenses, *imperfect*, *aurist*, *perfect*, etc. In modern Russian "aspects" replace the tenses and fulfil entirely the same object.

If Latin had evolved an infinitive *labōrābāre*, from the imperfect *labōrābam*, to express the habitual aspect, or *labōrāvire* (from *labōrāvī*) to express the completion or perfective, such separate by-forms of the verb would very nearly correspond with the Russian aspects. Such desideratives as *ēsūrīre*, from *ēsūrus*, future participle of

ēdō to eat, and the inceptives in *-esco*, might indeed in the parlance of Slavonic grammar be termed "aspects."

To those who know a little Greek, the aspects will be even more familiar.

Thus the present forms *νοσεῖν* to be ill, *ἀποθνήσκω* to die, correspond to the imperfective *болѣть* or *хворать* and *умирать*; the aorist forms *ἐνόσησα*, *ἰοσῆσαι*, *ἀποθανεῖν*, to the perfective *оболѣть*, *захворать*, *умерѣть*, to be taken ill, to die. E.g. *онъ оболѣлъ*, *захворалъ*, *ἐνόσησε*; but *онъ болѣлъ*, he was ill some time, *ἐνόσει*; *онъ умиралъ*, he lay a-dying, *ἀπέθνησκε*.

And just as *νοσήσω*, etc., is a future, not a present, but has the aorist stem, so *захвораю*, *умрѣ* signify I shall fall ill, etc. E.g. *умрѣтъ отъ чахотки* he will die of consumption.

How the Parts are Formed.

(iii) To know every form of the Russian verb, it is only necessary to learn the infinitive and 3rd person singular present. The rest follow.

Verbs Original and Derivative.

(iv) Verbs may be either original—i.e. unreferable to any simpler form—or derivative, from nouns or other verbs. E.g. in English "to fall," "to write," are original; "to book," "to tabulate" derivative (from the noun "book," and the Latin *tābula*, table). Or as in Latin, *dicere* to say, *iūdicāre*, from *iūdex*, a judge.

Derivatives, verbs which mostly represent complex ideas, greatly outnumber the primary verbs; in frequency of use they are less, as the simpler relations have to be constantly re-stated.

In Latin derivative verbs have a vocalic stem, e.g. *iūdicā-re*, *monē-re*, *audī-re*.* So, too, in Russian дѹма thought, дѹмать to think; зелёный green, зеленѣть to become green; живъ alive, жить to live ("original"), оживѣть to revive, from живой alive.

The derivative verbs being the more numerous, and the newest and easiest formations, tend to set the model, and become the "regular" verbs.

The primary verbs, being the most employed and the most worn down in daily use, also being drawn from more ancient sources, conserve obsolete forms, and are sometimes called "irregular"—arbitrarily and inaccurately. Actually Russian has next to no verbs that can be really termed anomalous.

Further, many "original" or "primary" verbs have consonantal stems or roots, e.g. Latin *reg-ere* to rule, *dic-ere* to say.

§ 43. THE RUSSIAN INFINITIVE.

The Russian infinitive ends in -ть and is preceded by the root in original verbs, by the stem in derivative verbs.

In some verbs -ті́ accented survived, e.g. нес-ті́ to carry.

* Russian verbs in -ѣть, -ѣю, -ать, -аю, -нть, -ю may be compared with the Latin -eo, -[a]o, -io, whilst the Russian first conjugation consists of root-verbs, like the Latin third.

In some few guttural stems, the guttural and -ть coalesce into -чь, e.g. печь to bake, for пек-ть; жечь to burn, for жег-ть.

In some dental roots, the dental and -ть coalesce into -сть, e.g. вести to lead, for вед-ть; плести to pleat, for плет-ть.

In "original" vocalic stems -ть follows the root, e.g. зна-ть to know.

Sometimes a consonant is extruded, e.g. жить to live, for жив-ть.

All derivative stems are vocalic, e.g. желá-ть to wish.

§ 44. THE FORMS DERIVED FROM THE RUSSIAN INFINITIVE.

The -ть termination must be removed, and the stem or root stripped.

- (1) By adding -нiе a verbal noun is formed;
e.g. колебáть to rock, колебáнiе; вѣять to blow,
вѣянiе.
- (2) By adding -лъ the past tense is formed;
e.g. я колебáлъ I rocked.*
- (3) By adding -я to the present stem the present
"gerundive" дѣла-ть; e.g. дѣлая doing.

* In consonantal stems this -лъ is dropped in the masculine singular, restored in the other inflections.

Е.g. *теперь* (root *тьр*) to rule, past tense *тѣръ*, *тѣрла* (fem.), etc.
лечь (root *лер*) to lie down, past tense *лѣгъ*, *легла* (fem.), etc.
-речь (root *рек*) to speak, past tense *рѣкъ*, *рѣкла* (fem.), etc.

But cf. for this last the Polish *rzékł*, and Čech *řekl*.

- (4) By adding -ущій, -ющій to the present stem the present participle; e.g. *имѣющій* possessing (*имѣ-ть*);* -ящій is added with *derivative* verbs in -ить: *пис-а-ть*, *пишущій*.
- (5) By adding -въ or -вши the past gerundive; e.g. *пис-а-ть* to write, *писа́въ*, *писа́вши*,† and by adding -вщій the past participle active; e.g. *веселѣ-ть* to enliven, *веселѣ-вщій*.
- (6) By adding -емый or -имый the present participle passive; e.g. *купѣ-ть* to buy, *купѣ́мый*; *зна-ть* to know, *зна́емый*.

An easier rule is to form this from the 1st person plural present *купѣ́мъ*, *зна́емъ*.

- (7) A perfect participle passive in *т* or *п*. *т* is only used in a very few verbs of certain types; e.g. *двѣ́нуть* to move, *двѣ́нутый*, *посл-а-ть* to send, *посла́нный* sent.

This participle is accented like the 2nd person singular present of variable verbs.

All participles are fully declined as predicatives and determinatives.

Before proceeding to learn the verbs, the student must be sure he knows the phonetic rules in §§ 2, 5, 6, 8, 9.

It will be observed that all the forms derived from the infinitive are accented like the infinitive. There are scarcely any exceptions to this rule.

* In older Russian the terminations were -учи, -ячи gerundive, -ущій, -ящій participle. Some of the latter survive as adjectives, e.g. *могучій* powerful (*мочь*), *горячій* (*горѣть*) hot, *сидячій* sedentary. *Будучи* is still used as the gerundive present of *быть*; *будущій*, the regular form, means "future."

† In consonantal roots the termination is -шій, e.g. *нес-ти* to carry, *несшій*, *нѣсшій*.

§ 45. THE FORMATIONS FROM THE 1ST PERSON SINGULAR PRESENT.

The *imperative* is formed from the 1st person singular present by substituting *й, ь* or *и* for *у* or *ю*.

The addition of *-te* makes this imperative form plural.

The same *-te* added to the 1st person plural makes a *hortative* mood "let us do."

The accentuation is that of the present tense.

e.g. *бúду* I shall be, *бúдь*, *бúдьте*, *бúдем-те*
веселю́ I enliven, *весели́*, *весели́те*

There are a very few exceptions to this general rule, viz. *бить* to beat [v. § 52 (2) *β*], *дать* to give [v. § 57, III.], *стоять* to stand [v. § 52 (3)], *боятся* to fear [v. § 52 (3)], *смеяться* to laugh [v. § 52 (3)], *крыть** to cover [v. § 52 (2) *ε*].

e.g. *внѣмлю́* I take, *внемли́* *бью́* I beat, *бей*
бою́ I fear, *бой-ся* *моюсь́* I wash, *мой-ся*

§ 46. THE ACCENTUATION OF THE VERB.

I. All the forms derived from the infinitive [v. § 44] have a fixed accent, that of the infinitive.

II. Except in a very few verbs the imperative has the accent of the 1st person singular present.

III. Verbs which uniformly accent the termination or the stem in every part are said to have a fixed

* The exception in verbs in *-ить* is apparent only: if the *и* be taken as a contraction of *-оé* or *у*, i.e. as equivalent to *-моётъ*.

accent. Only a few derivatives and most of the original verbs have a variable accent.

IV. The only constant variations in the accentuation of the verb are in the present tense and the past participle passive, and forms derived from the present stem.

V. Every verb which has an infinitive of two syllables or more, and is not accented on the ultimate, has a fixed accent.

VI. In dissyllabic verbs accented on the ultimate in the infinitive, the accent *may* vary on certain inflections.

VII. A verb with a variable accent accents the infinitive and 1st person singular present alike, the 2nd and 3rd persons singular, the 1st and 2nd plural, on the penultimate; the 3rd person plural either on the ultimate or penultimate, generally the latter.

VIII. As a rule, the past participle passive has the secondary accent when the accent is variable.*

IX. Russian verbs, original or derivative, with fixed or variable accents, are divided into four conjugations, which differ only very superficially and slightly.

e.g. **вѣ́дѣть** to see (rule V.).

вѣ́жу	вѣ́димъ
вѣ́дишь	вѣ́дите
вѣ́дитъ	вѣ́дятъ

пи́сать to write (rule VI.).

пи́шѹ	пи́шемъ
пи́шешь	пи́шете
пи́шетъ	пи́шутъ

* E.g. **воспита́тъ** educate, **воспи́танный** ; **пи́сать** write, **пи́шетъ**, **пи́санный**.

ска́зать to tell (rule VI.).

скажѹ	ска́жемъ
ска́жешь	ска́жете
ска́жетъ	ска́жутъ

не́сти to carry (invariable) (rule VI.).

несѹ	несѐмъ
несѣшь	несѣте [v. § 9 (7) (1)]
несѣтъ	несѹтъ

§ 47. EXAMPLES OF THE COMPLETE CONJUGATION OF TWO DERIVATIVE VERBS WITH FIXED ACCENTS.

<i>Infinitive :</i>	жела́-ть to wish	вѣри́-ть to believe
<i>Verbal noun :</i>	жела́нiе	[вѣренiе] *
<i>Present gerundive :</i>	жела́я	вѣ́ря
<i>Present part. act. :</i>	жела́ющій	вѣ́рящій
<i>Past gerundive act. :</i>	жела́въ, жела́вши	вѣ́ривъ, вѣ́ривши
<i>Past part. act. :</i>	жела́вшій	вѣ́рившій
<i>Present part. pass. :</i>	жела́емый	вѣ́римый†
<i>Past part. pass. :</i>	жела́нный	-вѣ́ренный
<i>Present :</i>	я жела́ю	вѣ́рю
	ты жела́ешь	вѣ́ришь
	онъ, она́, онó жела́етъ	вѣ́ритъ
	мы жела́емъ	вѣ́римъ
	вы жела́ете	вѣ́рите
	они́, онѣ́ жела́ютъ	вѣ́рятъ
<i>Past :</i>	я, ты жела́лъ, жела́ла	вѣ́рилъ, вѣ́рила
	онъ, она́, онó {	жела́лъ, жела́ла, жела́ло
		вѣ́рилъ, вѣ́рила, вѣ́рило
	мы, вы, они́, онѣ́	жела́ли, вѣ́рили

* Replaced by вѣ́рованiе, from вѣ́ровать.

† Rare.

Remember—з + я becomes жа or remains.

с + я becomes ша or remains.

с + ю becomes шу

з + ю becomes жу

ст + ю becomes шу

Remember.—The euphonic insertion of л after labial roots before ю, and -енный.

Before other soft vowels с, з and ст as a rule are merely softened in pronunciation, not changed in quality. [v. § 5 (4).]

§ 49. THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

At the head of § 42 there is printed a scheme of the four conjugations.

The first conjugation forms its present in -у, -ешь, -етъ, -емъ, -ете, -утъ, added directly on to the root, without any intermediate vowel.

It comprises the following classes:—

I. *Guttural Roots*.—Infinitive in -чь; e.g. печь to bake, лечь to lie down, мочь to be able.

e.g. печь to bake (root пек)	жечь to burn (root жг)
<i>Past part. act.:</i>	пёкшій жёгшій
<i>Gerundive:</i>	печа́ жёгши
<i>Present part. act.:</i>	пекúщій жгúщій
<i>Past part. pass.:</i>	печённый жжённый
<i>Present:</i>	пекú печёмъ жгу жжёмъ
	печёшь печёте жжёшь жжете
	печётъ пекúтъ жжётъ жгутъ
<i>Past:</i>	пёкъ, пекла́, пекло́, пекли́; жёгъ, жгла́, жгло́, жгли́
<i>Imperative:</i>	пеки́; жги

Similarly:—

речь to speak (root *pek*)—this verb is obsolete.

лечь to lie down (irregular present stem *лягу*,
ляжешь, лягутъ; but past лёгъ, легла, легло,
легли); imperative лягъ

мочь to be able (root *mor*)

Note.—мочь makes могу́, можешь, можетъ, можемъ,
можете, могутъ; imperative моги́, etc.

Similarly:—

вечь to draw (root *влек*)

сѣчь to cut (root *сѣк*)

беречь to shelter (root *бер*, present берегú,
бережешь . . . берегúтъ, past берёгъ,
берегла́, берегло́, берегли́)

стеречь to guard (root *стер*, like беречь)

стричься to have the hair cut (root *стриг*)*

течь to flow (root *тек*)

запрячь to yoke (root *пряг*: note the past
запрягъ, sounded прыжок, пригlá, -ló, -lí)

волочь to drag (root *волок*)

Practically all of these have a fixed accent on the termination.

II. *Nasal Roots.*—Infinitive in -ять (-ать after ж, ч, etc.).

Remember.—The Russian я represents the Old Slav *ę*
(French *aim*, *in*, in *faim*, *fin*); and the nasal lost in
some forms is restored in fuller inflections; cf. время,
времени. [v. § 2 (2).]

e.g. нача́ть to begin (root *чън*); cf. imperfective
начина́ть

* Note past participle passive остри́женный.

The present gerundive and participle *начая* and *начая́ющій* do not exist, as the verb is perfective and has no present tense; only the past active participles *начавъ*, *начавшій*.

But note *past part. pass.* *начатый*, or *начато́й*.

Present (with future meaning):—

начну́	начнёмъ
начнёшь	начнёте
начнётъ	начну́тъ

Past: *началъ*, *начала́*, *начало*, *начали*

Imperative: *начни́*

Verbs of this class take the past passive participle in т, and mostly throw the accent back on the past tense in -лъ and the participle in т. Otherwise the accent is always on the termination.

Such are:—*жать* (*жму*) to press (root *жъм*); *жать* (*жну*) to reap (root *жън*), *чать* (root *чън*); only used in compounds, e.g. *начина́ть* begin, *сочиня́ть* compose; *пять* (*пну*, root *пън*), mostly used in compounds, e.g. *распя́ть* to crucify.

Verbs of this class take the verbal substantive in -tie (as also do the liquid roots, v. infra).

e.g. *распя́tie* the crucifixion

поня́tie the meaning (of a passage)

There is one other such verb (with a nasal root) of great consequence, only used in compounds, viz. *-ять* (root *ем*, Latin *emere*) to take.

In compounds, as with the 3rd person pronoun [v. § 41, V. (2)], *н* is prefixed to the root.

e.g. нанѣть to hire, принѣть accept, понѣть to understand, занѣть to occupy (oneself) or to lend, взѣть to take up, снѣть to take away ; all in the imperfective, нанимѣть, принимѣть, etc. ; all having a past participle passive, нанѣнь, занѣнь, etc.

The present restores the original root -емъ.

e.g. наймѹ, наймѣшь, etc., поймѹ, возьмѹ, займѹ, etc.

There also exists a perfective present form in ѣмлю, внемлю, внемлешь, conjugated like a verb with fixed accent of the third conjugation, but with an imperative accented внемли.

III. *Sibilant Roots.*

These are :—

нести to carry (root нес)
 везти to drive (e.g. in a carriage) (root вез)
 грызть to gnaw (root грыз)
 лѣзть to climb (root лѣз)
 ползти to creep (root полз)
 пастѣ to graze (transitive) (root паст)

Example :—

Infinitive : везти

Gerundive present : вези

Participle present : везущій

Gerundive past : вѣзши

Past participle passive : везённый

Verbal, derived from imperfective : -вожѣние

Present : везѹ, везѣшь, etc.

Past : вѣзь, вези́, -лѣ, -ли́

Imperative : вези́

Notice.—лѣзть has a present лѣзу, лѣзешь, etc., лѣзуть ; imperative лѣзь.

IV. *Roots in Liquids* : -ере-, -оро-, -еле-, -оло-.

- (1) e.g. терѣть to rub (root тѣр, imperf. тира́ть)
 -мерѣть to die (root мѣр, imperf. -мира́ть)
 перѣть to prop (root пѣр, imperf. пира́ть)

Example :—

Infinitive : терѣть

Verbal : трѣніе*

Past part. pass. : тѣргъ, like the roots in nasals

Present gerundive act. : трѹщи

Present part. act. : трѹщій

Past part. act. : тѣртый

Present : тру, трѣшь, трѣть, трѣмъ, трѣте, трутъ

Past : тѣръ, тѣрла, -ло, -ли

Like the roots in nasals, the verbal noun and past participle passive are formed with т, and the past tense and past participle passive throw the accent back on to the particle with which they are compounded.

e.g. ѹмеръ, умерла́, ѹмерло, ѹмерли (ѹмерѣть)

So, too, по́дперъ (but -пѣръ) to prop.

- | | |
|----------------------|-----------------|
| (2) борóтъ to fight† | полóтъ to weed |
| порóтъ to rend | молóтъ to grind |
| колóтъ to pierce | |

колóтъ to pierce.

Present part. act. : кóлющій

Past part. act. : колóвшій

Verbal noun : колóтье

Past part. pass. : кóлотъ

Present part. pass. : кóлемый

Present (following the third conjugation) : колю́,
 колѣшь, кóлетъ, кóлемъ, кóлете, кóлютъ

Past : колóлъ, колóла, колóло, колóли

* трѣpie is disused.

† Used with -ся, omitted in example,

These five verbs differ slightly from the verbs in -ерѣть, -елѣть.

(a) The present as in the third conjugation.

(β) A uniformly variable accent. [v. § 46.]

(γ) A regular vocalic past tense with fixed accent.

(δ) молотъ is *irregular* in forming its present: мелю, мѣлешь, мѣлеть, мѣлемъ, мѣлете, мѣлють, as though from an infinitive мелѣть.

V. *Roots in Dentals.*

e.g. вестѣи to lead (root вед)

гнестѣи to press (root гнет)

цвѣстѣи to bloom (root цвѣт), but v. § 9 (7) (3)

класть to lay (root клад)

красть to steal (root крад)

(крадѹ, краденый)

пасть to fall (root пад)

прясть to spin (root пряд)

сѣсть to sit (сѣду, сѣдешь)

растѣи to grow (root раст: растѹ, etc.; past tense росъ)

-честъ to read (root чыт)

идти to go (root ьд)

and by false analogy—

скрестъ to scrape (root скреб: скребѹ, скребѣшь—скребѣ)

грестъ to row (root греб: гребѹ, гребѣшь, гребѣ)

клясть to swear (root клян: клянѹ, клянѣшь—клянѣ)

These verbs form the past in лѣ added on to the vowel of the infinitive, the real root being disregarded.

e.g. вѣлѣ, велѣ́, велѣ́о, велѣ́и

So гнѣлѣ, цвѣлѣ́, клалѣ́

Exceptions, грестъ and скрестъ: грёбъ, гребла́, гребли́; скрёбъ, скребла́, скребли́; and расти́ (root раст), расту́, растёшь, рос -ъ, -ла́, -ло́, -ли́.

честь and идти́ follow slightly different rules.

Present: идú (in compounds йду, e.g. найду I shall find, etc.), идёшь, идётъ, идёмъ, идёте, идúтъ

Past (from root шед): шёлъ, шла́, шли́

Participles and gerundives: идя́, идúщій, шедши́й

честь (only used in compounds, root чьт)

Present: -чту, -чтёшь, -чтутъ

Past: -чёлъ, -чла́, -чли́

Verbal noun: -чтё́ние

Participles and gerundives: -чтя, -чтúщій, -чти́вший, -чтённы́й

сѣсть has a present сяду́ accented uniformly like лечь, лягу. красть accents the present краду́, крадёшь, etc.

With these variations, one example will explain all these verbs.

красть to steal

Present gerundive active: кради́

Present participle active: краду́щій

Past participle active: кра́дши́й

Past participle passive: кра́денъ, кра́денны́й

Present: краду́, -ёшь, -ётъ, -ёмъ, -ёте, -у́тъ

Imperative: кради́

All these forms use the real root of the verb in the present forms.

Past: кра́лъ, кра́ла, кра́ло, кра́ли

So, too, сѣ́лъ, сѣ́ла, сѣ́ло, сѣ́ли

For the accentuation of the past tense in its inflections, as a rule, monosyllables derived from verbs which accent the terminations throw the accent forward.

e.g. лѣгъ, легла́, легло́, легли́

паль* (пасть) and сѣль (сѣсть) have a fixed accent, influenced by the derivative parts from verbs in -ать and -ѣть.

Forms such as вѣль, плѣль (вѣсти́, плести́) throw the accent forward like лѣгъ, росъ; so, too, кляль (клясть, клянѹ́), кралъ (красть).

Except in original verbs, mostly monosyllabic, the past tense, or rather the participle in -л, never shifts the accent.

VI. *Roots in в.* These are three in number.

· жить to live

плыть to swim

слыть to have a reputation of (Greek κλύειν)

e.g. онъ слывѣтъ мѹдрымъ he is thought wise.

One example illustrates all three.

жить to live

Verbal noun : житіѣ and житьѣ

Past participle passive : -жѣтый

Gerundive present active : живѣ

Participle present active : живѹщій (but older form, used adjectivally, живѹчій)

Gerundive past active : жѣвши, живѣ

Participle past active : жѣвшій

Present : живѹ́, живѣшь . . . живѹтъ

Past : жилъ, жила́, жило́, жили́

* Cf. Polish padł.

§ 50. THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

The first conjugation consists of consonantal roots attached directly to the terminations. This involves phonological difficulties, and slightly complicates the accentuation and appearance of the forms.

The second conjugation is composed of roots with a vocalic suffix, and thus greater apparent regularity is secured.

The marks of the second conjugation are: infinitive, -нѹть; present, -нѹ, -нешь, -нетъ, -немъ, -нете, -нѹтъ, or, accented, -нѹ́, -нѣшь, -нѣтъ, -нѣмъ, -нѣте, -нѹ́тъ.

The present forms are therefore identical with those of the first conjugation, save for the prefixing of the н.

This conjugation falls under two main heads, which must be carefully distinguished.

I. Perfective verbs conserving the “нѹ” suffix throughout all the forms of verb, and mostly accented like the imperfective verb from which they are derived. These verbs [v. § 59, I. (2)] as perfectives have a peculiar meaning of instantaneity—of doing an action once and suddenly. The suffixal vowel of the imperfective verb is dropped, and sometimes the last consonant of the root as well, to avoid heavy combinations of the consonants.

e.g. вертѣть	to turn	вернѹть
стегать	to quilt	стегнѹть
порхать	to flutter	порхнѹть
махать	to wave	махнѹть
двѣгать	to move	двѣнѹть

e.g. дѣргать	to pull	дѣрнуть
трѣгать	to touch	трѣнуть
лѣпать	to split	лѣпнуть
тонѣть	to sink	тонуть* to drown
тягивать	to drag	тянуть* to pull
касаться	to concern	коснуться
шептать	to whisper	шепнуть

There are some exceptions to this rule of accentuation.

e.g. глядѣть	to look at	глянуть
кидѣть	to leave	кинуть
чѣрпать	to take in water (of a ship)	чѣрпнуть
зіять	to gape	-зінуть
кричѣть	to cry	крикнуть

Note, however, compounds in глянуть have a *variable* accent.

e.g. заглянуть, загляну́, заглянешь, etc.

II. Verbs in -нуть, imperfective and intransitive.

In the past tense the simple root is used, with no suffixal vowel between the last consonant and *лѣ*, which latter, as in the first conjugation, drops in the masculine singular.

These verbs are distinguished from ordinary imperfectives by having the special *inchoative* meaning of "becoming."

* With variable accent *тѣнешь*, *тѣнешь*, *тѣнутый*.

These verbs are nearly all accented on the penultimate.

- e.g. слѣпнѹть to become blind
 сохнѹть to become dry
 чахнѹть to die gradually, or wither
 стынѹть to cool
 гнѣбнѹть (гнѣбѹть) to decay
 тихнѹть to become quiet

In this class a few verbs have the past tense in -нѹлъ.

- e.g. липнѹть to adhere, липнѹлъ; -снѹть (mostly used in compounds, e.g. заснѹть, проснѹть) to sleep, -снѹлъ (as the perfective of засыпѹть, etc.)

The present runs -снѹ, -снѣшь . . . снѹть.*

III. Examples of conjugation in both varieties.

	Perfective and Transitive. кнѹть to cast off	Imperf. and Intrans. гнѣбнѹть to decay
<i>Infinitive :</i>	кнѹть	гнѣбнѹть
<i>Verbal noun :</i>	(кнѹтіе)	none
<i>Past part. pass. :</i>	кнѹтый (in т not н)	none
<i>Present part. act. :</i>	none	гнѣбнѹщій
<i>Present gerundive act. :</i>	none	гнѣбнѹщи
<i>Past gerundive act. :</i>	кнѹвши	гнѣбнѹвши
<i>Past part. act. :</i>	кнѹвшій	гнѣбнѹвшій
<i>Present part. pass. :</i>	none	none
<i>Present :</i>	кнѹ, кнѣшь, кнѣтъ, кнѣмъ, кнѣте, кнѹть	гнѣбѹ, гнѣбѣшь, гнѣбѣтъ, гнѣбѣмъ, гнѣбѣте, гнѣбѹтъ
<i>Past :</i>	кнѹлъ, кнѹла, кнѹло, кнѹли	гнѣбѹ, гнѣбла, гнѣбло, гнѣбли
<i>Imperative :</i>	кнѹ	гнѣбѹ

* Cf. the noun сонъ, сна.

§ 51. THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

Preliminary.

The characteristic of this conjugation is the present in -ю, -ешь, -етъ, -емъ, -ете, -ютъ.

This conjugation comprises a number of primary original verbs, mostly monosyllables, and vocalic roots (thereby distinct from those in the first conjugation); a few consonantal roots also exist.

It comprises the enormous and increasing number of regular derivatives in -ѣтъ; the derivative verbs in -ать and -ять, which is the commonest form, and the large class of verbs in -овать, -евать, together with the iteratives in -ывать, -пывать.

Thus, this conjugation perhaps embraces the majority of Russian verbs.

An example of a simple regular verb in -ать is to be found at § 47.

Verbs in -ѣтъ are precisely the same, e.g. зеленѣ́тъ to become green, the stem зеленѣ́- being substituted for the stem желѣ́а-.

§ 52. THE ORIGINAL VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

I. Those in which the terminations are directly affixed to the root.

(1) *Liquid roots in -олоть, -ороть.*

These have been explained in § 49, IV. (2).

(2) *Vocalic roots*.—(a) Roots in а.

e.g. зна-ть to know

This is conjugated exactly like желáть [v. § 47].

So, too, сія-ть to shine (сіяю).

(β) Roots in и.

e.g. бить to beat	лить to flow	шить to sew
вить to wind	брить to shave	гнить to rot

All of these form the *past participle passive* in -тъ.

e.g. бить, вить, лить, etc.

The *verbal nouns* are formed either in -ітіе or -ѣніе.

e.g. битьѣ, біѣніе, гніѣніе, etc.

The present tense is formed:—

бю, бѣшь, бѣтъ, бѣмъ, бѣте, бютъ

So, too, шю, гнію, лыю, व्यю, etc.

But брить, брѣю, брѣешь, брѣетъ, брѣемъ, брѣете, брѣютъ.

The other forms present no variance; e.g. бя, бьющій, бѣвшій, билъ (біла, біло, біли), бей (imperative). [v. § 45.]

(γ) Roots in у.

e.g. дуть to blow обуть to put on [shoes]

These are quite regular, the root being ду, обұ.

e.g. дую, дѣешь . . . дуютъ, дуй
 дуя, дѣющій, дѣвшій, дулъ

The verbal noun and past participle passive are
 in т, дутьѣ, обутьіе, дуть, обұтъ.

(δ) Roots in ѣ.

смѣть to dare*	грѣть to warm
успѣть to succeed	

* Not to be confused with смѣяться laugh. [v. § 52, I. (3).]

There are very few original verbs of this type; they are all regularly conjugated like the derivatives in -ѣть, or like желáю [v. § 47], substituting the root in ѣ for желá-.

They are all accented throughout on the root-vowel ѣ; e.g. смѣю, грѣѣть, успѣль. For -дѣть dress, v. § 57, II.

For пѣть, v. following sub-section (ε).

(ε) Verbs in -ыть.

[For быть to be, v. § 57, II. This verb is anomalous, forming its parts—as in nearly all Indo-European languages—out of several separate roots.]

e.g. крыть to cover, мыть to wash, выть to howl, рыть to dig; ныть to be injured, and пѣть to sing, which accents the termination; пою, поёшь, поётъ, поёмъ, поёте, поютъ.

ы fully accented is sounded almost as a diphthong *ii*, and крыть may be taken as an abbreviated form of крёеть. One example will illustrate them all.

Infinitive: крыть

Verbal noun: крѣтіе*

Past participle pass.: крѣтъ*

Past participle act.: крѣвшій

Past gerundive act.: крѣвъ, крѣвши

Past: крѣль, крѣла, крѣло, крѣли

Present: крѣю, крѣёшь, крѣётъ, крѣёмъ, крѣёте, крѣютъ

Present participle pass.: крѣемый

Imperative: крѣй, крѣйте

* From §§ 49 I., II., IV., VI., § 50, § 52, I. (2) (β) (γ) (ε), it will be seen that most of the primitive root-verbs, consonantal and vocalic, have the past participle passive in т and not in н.

II. Verbs with an infinitive in -ать, -ять; but affixing the root directly on to the terminations of the present tense.

Of these verbs there is an immense number. Some instances can be given. Otherwise they are conjugated like *желаю* or *дѣлаю*.

		Present.	Accentuation.
та́ять	to thaw	та́ю	fixed
ла́ять	to bark	ла́ю	"
ка́пать	to trickle	ка́плю (ка́паю)	"
ма́зать	to anoint	ма́жу	"
рѣ́зать	to cut	рѣ́жу	"
чу́ять	to hear	чу́ю	"
прѣ́тать	to hide	прѣ́чу	"
вѣ́ять	to wave	вѣ́ю	"
ора́ть	to plough	ору́ю	"
наде́яться	to hope	наде́юсь	"
пла́кать	to weep	пла́чу	"
дви́гать	to move	дви́жу (дви́гаю)	"
писа́ть	to write	пи́шу, but пи́шешь, variable пи́шутъ, and пи́санный	
сме́яться	to laugh	сме́юсь	invariable
вяза́ть	to bind	вяза́ю	variable
дрема́ть	to sleep	дремлю́	"
шепта́ть	to whisper	шепчу́	"
сказа́ть	to say	скажу́	"
лепетáть	to stammer	лепечу́	"

Nearly all the verbs of this class accented on the last syllable have a shifting accent, like that of *писа́ть*.

Notice.—(1) *стена́ть*, to groan, has mixed forms: *стена́ю*, *стена́ешь*, etc., or *сто́ню*, *сто́нешь*, etc.; past *стена́лъ* or *сто́наль*.

- (2) колебáть to rock, колеблѹ or колебáю, колеблѣшь or колебáешь, etc.
- (3) слáть to send, шлѹ, шлѣшь, шлѣтъ, шлѣте, шлѹтъ (imperfective -сылáть).
- (4) стлáть to spread, стелѹ, стѣлѣшь, etc., стѣлѹтъ; past стлáль, стлáла, стлáло, стлáли.
- (5) дыхáть to breathe, дышѹ, дѣшь, дышѣтъ or дыхáю, дыхáешь, etc., in compounds.
- (6) страдáть to suffer, страждѹ or страдáю in the 1st person; otherwise страдáю, страдáешь, etc. страждѹ is a Church Slavonic form, the true Russian would have been стражѹ.

§ 53. THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

The Derivative Verbs.

There are three forms of derivatives in the third conjugation:—

(1) With the infinitive in -ать or -ять, and stem in -а-, -я-, mostly derived from nouns, and conserving fixedly the accent of the noun. These are mostly transitive.

e.g. дѣло thing	дѣлáть to do
рабóта work	рабóтáть to work
печáть printing	печáтáть to print
любѣзникъ courtier	любѣзничáть to court

There are *very* few exceptions to this rule of the uniformity of accentuation of noun and verb.

e.g. хворýй ill	хворáть to be ill
ласка affection	ласкáть to dandle

(2) With the infinitive in -ѣть *accented*, intransitive, and with an inceptive and imperfective meaning.

e.g. зеленѣть	to become green	(зелѣный)
богатѣть	to become rich	(богáтый)
желтѣть	to become yellow	(жёлтый)
слабѣть	to become weak	(слабый)
мужать	to become a man	(мужь)

Remember—ж, ш, ч, щ + ѣ in Russian make жа, ша, ча, ша. [v. §§ 37 and 2 (3).]

These derivatives in -ѣть are all oxytone. Except:—

(a) A few words, e.g. угрюмый severe, угрюмѣть.

(β) In accordance with the same principle of conserving the accent of the noun or adjective all inceptives in -ѣть, from adjectives in -авый, -ивый, -овый, -атый, retain the adjectival accent.

e.g. кровáвѣть	to become bloody
мíлостивѣть	to become merciful
космáтѣть	to become shaggy
безлúдѣть	to be depopulated (безъ людéй)
обезпáмѣть	to lose memory (безъ пáмѣти)

For full model of conjugation of these derivatives, all of which have a fixed accent, v. § 47, желáть.

(3) I. *Derivatives in -овать, -евать, e.g. чýвствовать from чýвство feeling.*

<i>Infinitive :</i>	чýвствовать	горевáть
<i>Verbal noun :</i>	чýвствованiе	горевáнiе
<i>Past part. pass. :</i>	—	—
<i>„ger. and part. act. :</i>	чýвствовавший, -ши	горевáвший, -ши
<i>Past :</i>	чýвствовалъ	горевáлъ
<i>Present :</i>	чýвствую, -ешь, etc.	горюю, -ешь, etc.
<i>Present part. act. :</i>	чýвствующiй	горюющiй
<i>Present gerundive :</i>	чýвствуя	горюя
<i>Imperative :</i>	чýвствуй	горюй

The accent on these derivatives is fixed, mostly, on the syllable accented in the noun or adjective from which they are derived. But in the present, and those forms derived from it, -ов, -ев changes to -у, which is accented, when the infinitive is oxytone.

e.g. вѣра, вѣровать to believe
 жѣртва, жѣртву, жѣртовать to sacrifice
 бесѣда, бесѣдовать to converse
 вѣрварь, вѣрварствовать to be barbarous
 существо а "being," существовать to exist
 вой-на́, воева́ть to war

The foreign loan-words in -ировать. These if quadrisyllabic accent прова́ть; if pentasyllabic, or beyond, и́ровать.

e.g. акклиматизи́ровать to acclimatize
 [but характери́зировать to characterize]
 аплоди́ровать to applaud
 цивили́зировать to civilize, etc.

But notice—здоровый healthy, здоро́ваться; здоро́ваюсь to greet. This is really a derivative from the adjective. [v. § 53 (1).]

II. There are a few *original* verbs in -овать, -евать, which really belong to § 52; but, as they are exactly like the derivatives, may be more conveniently treated here.

They all accent in the same way:—

e.g. кова́ть	to forge	кую́, куёшь	fixed accent
основа́ть	to found	осну́ю, оснуёшь	„ „
сова́ть	to thrust	сую́	„ „
клева́ть	to nibble	кля́ю	„ „
жева́ть	to chew	жу́ю	„ „

(4) *Iteratives* in -а́ть, -я́ть.

There is one aspect of the Russian called iterative or frequentative, signifying habitual or repeated action.

One form of this is an inflection in -а́ть, -я́ть, -а́ю, -я́ю.

e.g. двѣ́гать to move, perfective двѣ́жу [v. § 52 (3)]

двѣга́ть to move, iterative двѣга́ю

нача́ть to begin, perfective начну́ [v. § 49 (2)]

начина́ть to begin, imperfective

Other examples will be given in the section on the aspects. [v. § 59 (4).]

The conjugation is regular, like желаю́ [v. § 47].

(5) *Iteratives* in -ыва́ть, -ива́ть.

(a) Where the root of the verb is vocalic, in -ва́ть.

e.g. да́ть	to give	дава́ть
бы́ть	to be	быва́ть
ста́ть	to become	-става́ть
обу́ться	to be shod (perf.)	обува́ться

(β) Where the verb is dissyllabic, or the root consonantal in -ыва́ть, -ива́ть, *with the accent on the root.*

e.g. писа́ть	to write	пи́сывать
звать	to call	зо́вывать [v. § 49, VII.] and -зыва́ть
торгова́ть	to trade	торго́вывать
игра́ть	to play	и́грывать
ходи́ть	to go	ха́живать
говори́ть	to speak	гова́ривать

For other instances, v. § 59, I. (4).

These forms are conjugated regularly with a fixed accent; e.g. быва́ю, пи́сываю, гова́риваю, like жела́ть [v. § 47].

Observe.—дава́ть (from дать) forms its present like кова́ть [v. § 53 (3) II.], даю́, даёшь, даётъ, etc. Similarly -става́ть has -стаю́, -стаёшь, etc., and -знава́ть (from знать to know), -знаю́, -знаёшь, etc.

§ 54. THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Preliminary.

The fourth conjugation consists mainly of derivative verbs with fixed accentuation.

The infinitive is in -ѣть for a few very common original verbs, and in -ать, -ять in four others: гна́ть to drive, сна́ть to sleep, сто́ять to be worth (connected with ста́ть to stand), and бо́яться to fear.

Otherwise the infinitive is in -ить, and the present terminations -ю, -ишь, -итъ, -имъ, -ите, -ять are added *directly* to the root or stem, the thematic vowel и only occurring in the infinitive and forms thence derived. For a complete paradigm of the derivative verb, v. § 47, вѣ́рить, and cf. §§ 44 and 45.

The derivative verbs of the fourth conjugation are mostly transitive, and often causative.

e.g. сла́бъ weak, слабе́ть to become weak, сла́бить to make weak

ста́ръ old, старе́ть to become old, ста́рить to make old

бога́тъ rich, богатѣ́ть to become rich, бога́тить to enrich

ле́дяной (from лё́дъ ice), ледене́ть to freeze (intransitive), ледени́ть to freeze (transitive)

When derived from verbs, forms in -ить are usually

the imperfectives of primitive verbs of the first conjugation.

e.g. нести́	to carry	нести́ть
везти́	to carry	вести́ть
вести́	to lead	вести́ть
лечь	to lie	лечь to lay
		лежать to lie (intrans.)

Generally speaking, these derivative verbs accent the termination throughout; there are many exceptions, some of which are detailed in § 56.

§ 55. THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Original Verbs.

I. Verbs in -ать, -ять.

	гнать	стоять	спать
	to drive	to stand	to sleep
<i>Verbal noun :</i>	гна́ние	стоя́ние	—
<i>Past part. pass. :</i>	гна́нный	—	—
<i>Gerundive present :</i>	гона́	сто́я	—
<i>Present part. :</i>	гона́щий	сто́ящий	спя́щий
<i>Gerundive past :</i>	гнавъ	стоявъ	—
	гна́вши	стоя́вши	спа́вши
<i>Present :</i>	гона́ю	стою́	сплю́
	го́нишь	стои́шь	спи́шь
	го́нितъ	стои́тъ	спи́тъ
	го́нимъ	стои́мъ	спи́мъ
	го́ните	стои́те	спи́те
	го́нять	стои́тъ	спя́тъ
<i>Imperative :</i>	гоня́	стой	спи
<i>Past :</i>	гналъ	стоялъ	спалъ
<i>Present part. pass. :</i>	гона́емый	—	—

боя́ться, to fear, is conjugated like сто́ять; the imperative is бо́йся.

II. Verbs in -ѣть.

Roots terminating in ш, ж, ч change ѣ to а;
e.g. лежа́ть. Cf. § 37 and § 53 (2), and § 2 (3).

These verbs mostly have a fixed accent on the terminations.

e.g. гори́ть to burn, горю́, гори́шь . . . гори́тъ
 шумѣ́ть to be noisy, шумлю́, шуми́шь, шумя́тъ
 летѣ́ть to fly, летчу́, лети́шь, летя́тъ
 сидѣ́ть* to sit, сижу́, сиди́шь, сидя́тъ
 дрожа́ть to tremble, дрожу́, дрожи́шь, дрожа́тъ
 крича́ть to cry, кричу́, кричи́шь, крича́тъ
 лежа́ть to lie, лежу́, лежи́шь, лежа́тъ*
 стуча́ть to knock, стучу́, стуча́тъ
 молча́ть* to be silent, молчу́, молча́тъ
 бо́лѣть (impersonal), боли́тъ, боля́тъ
 велѣ́тъ† to command, велю́, вели́шь
 глядѣ́ть* to look at, гляжу́, гляжи́шь, etc.

Some have a moveable accent.

e.g. смотре́ть to look at, смотрю́, смотре́шь . . .
 смотря́тъ, смотре́щий, -смотре́нный
 терпе́ть to endure, терплю́, терпи́шь . . . терпе́тъ
 (but терпи́мый, терпе́нный)
 держа́ть to hold, держу́, держи́шь . . . держа́тъ
 (past part. pass. держа́нный)

* Present gerundive сидя́, лёжа, молча, глядя.

† Takes the dative.

дыша́ть to breathe, дышѹ́, ды́шишь, ды́шатъ
(Also a secondary form, дыха́ть, дышѹ́, ды́шешь,
ды́шутъ in the third conjugation)

люби́ть to love, люблю́, люби́шь . . . любя́тъ,
любя́щий, любя́мый

верѣ́тъ, to turn, usually has a fixed accent on the termination ; верѣ́тишь, верѣ́тить, верѣ́тятъ are also found.

висѣ́тъ to hang (intransitive) has a fixed accent ; but in compounds accents the root, e.g. зави́сѣтъ.

A few are accented fixedly on the root.

e.g. слы́шать, слы́шу, слы́шатъ, etc., to hear

ви́дѣтъ, ви́жу, ви́дятъ to see

As a rough guide it may be stated that verbs of the fourth conjugation with the infinitive in -ѣтъ, if intransitive have a fixed accent, if transitive have a moveable accent.

Note.—плати́тъ, to pay (плачу́, пла́тишь, пла́тятъ, пла́ченный), must be distinguished from пла́кать, пла́чу to weep ; пла́тишь . . . пла́тятъ, to pay, is sometimes written, and commonly sounded плати́шь . . . платя́тъ.

The past tense of this conjugation ends in -ѣлъ, -аъ, accented like the infinitive.

In this class the irregular verbs хотѣ́тъ to wish, and бѣ́жать to run, must be included. бѣ́жать has two irregular forms, бѣ́гу I run, бѣ́гутъ they run, and derivative forms. смотре́тъ, to look, is also given in full, to illustrate a verb of the fourth conjugation with a moveable accent.

<i>Infinitive</i> :	хотѣ́тъ	смотре́тъ	бѣжа́тъ
<i>Past</i> :	хотѣ́лъ	смотре́лъ	бѣжа́лъ
<i>Past gerun.</i> :	хотѣ́въ, хотѣ́вши	смотре́въ	бѣжа́въ
		смотре́вши	бѣжа́вши
<i>Pres. gerun.</i> :	хотя́ [not used]	смотре́я	бѣжа́
<i>Pres. part. act.</i> :	хотя́щій	смотре́щій	бѣгу́щій
<i>Past part. act.</i> :	хотѣ́вшій	смотре́вшій	бѣжа́вшій
<i>Past pt. pass.</i> :	—	[о]смотре́нный	—
<i>Present</i> :	я хочú	смотрю́	бѣгу́
	ты хочешь	смотре́шь	бѣжи́шь
	она, онъ хочетъ	смотре́тъ	бѣжи́тъ
	мы хотимъ	смотре́мъ	бѣжимъ
	вы хотите	смотре́те	бѣжите
	они́, онѣ́ хотятъ	смотре́тъ	бѣгу́тъ
<i>Pres. pt. pass.</i> :	хотимый	—	—
<i>Imperative</i> :	хоти́	смотри́	бѣги́

Most dissyllabic original verbs in -и́тъ have a variable accent, e.g. учи́тъ to learn, учú, учи́шь; пустить to let go, пуцú, пусти́шь; the 1st person singular only is accented like the infinitive, e.g. пу́стятъ, слúжатъ (they serve). The present gerundive active, present participle active, and present participle passive are generally accented like the infinitive, e.g. любя́, любя́щій, люби́мый (люби́тъ to love).

The past participle passive is generally accented like the secondary accent of the present, e.g. хвата́тъ to seize, хвачú, хва́тишь, хва́ченный.

Some verbs have a fixed accent, e.g. прости́тъ to forgive, прощú, прости́шь, прощённый, etc.; but such are mostly derivative, e.g. да́ръ gift, да́рить to present, дѣ́во marvel, уди́вится to marvel.

§ 56. THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Derivative Verbs.

The infinitive *always* ends in -ить, and the accentuation is fixed; v. § 47 for an example.

As stated in § 54 these derivative verbs are mostly accented on the terminations.

e.g. from adjectives and nouns:—

чёрный	black	чернить	to blacken
пьяный	drunk	пьянить	to make drunk
хитрый	cunning	хитрить	{to dodge to be cunning
мúка*	torment	мýчить	to torture
грусть	sorrow	грустить	to grieve

But those derived from verbs mostly have a variable accent, e.g. ставить (ставлю, ста́вишь), носить, возить, водить, будить (to place, carry, convey, lead, awaken), from стать, нести́, везти́, вести́, бдѣть, v. § 54.

But very many conserve the original accent, especially if the verb has more than two syllables.

e.g. споръ	dispute	спóрить	to dispute
ссора	quarrel	ссора́ть	to set at variance
слабый	weak	сла́бить	to weaken
ста́рый	old	ста́рить	to make old
кислый	acid	кисли́ть	make acid
ни́зь	low down	ни́зить	to degrade
ни́щій	poor	ни́щать	to impoverish
вѣра	faith	вѣ́рить	to believe

* Distinguish from мукá flour: мучи́ть to flour.

Trisyllabic :—

гото́вый	ready	гото́вить	to make ready (past part. pass. гото́вленный)
эконо́мъ	economical	эконо́мить	to economize (trans. and intrans.)

To this last principle that trisyllabic verbs retain the original accent there are many exceptions, especially in all adjectives and nouns denoting substance.

e.g. бога́тый	rich	богати́ть	to enrich
весёлый	merry	весели́ть	enliven
зелёный	green	зелени́ть	to make green
зото́	gold	золоти́ть	to gild (золоче́нный)
ле́дь	ice, icy	ледени́ть	to freeze
го́воръ	speech	говори́ть	to say

§ 57. ANOMALOUS VERBS.

A few anomalous verbs remain over for discussion. They are *either* of mixed conjugations or obsolete forms.

I. *Mixed conjugations.*

(1) The same root throughout.

(a) певѣ́ть, to roar, forms its present like a verb of the first conjugation, e.g. *пе́ву, певёшь . . . певу́тъ*, and therefore all derivative forms such as *певу́щий, певя́* (gerundive), etc.

(β) хоте́ть to wish [v. § 55, II.].

(γ) -дѣ́ть (only used in compounds, оде́ть to dress, etc.) and ста́ть, to stand, form their present in *дѣ́ву, дѣ́нешь; ста́ну, ста́нешь*; and belong to the first conjugation.

- (δ) посѣтить to visit, обратѣть to direct, from the 1st person present in щ instead of ч; thus, посѣщѹ, посѣтѣшь; обрацѹ, обратѣшь.
- (ε) -шибѣть (only used in compounds, e.g. ошибѣться make a mistake, perfective; imperfective ошибаться, ошибаюсь, etc.) forms its present as in the first conjugation, its past as in the intransitives of the second, e.g. ошибѹсь, ошибѣтся . . . ошибѹтся; past ошибся, ошиблась, ошиблось, ошиблись. The participles are ошибающийся, ошибшійся; gerundives, ошибаясь, ошибшись.
- (ζ) Distinguish зрѣть, зрю, зрять [зрѣнный] to look at; and зрѣть to ripen, зрѣю, зрѣешь, etc.

II. Using different roots.

E.g. in English "to be," "I was," "to go," "I went."

(1) итѣ forms its present from the root ит, its past from шед. e.g.

Present: идѹ, идѣшь . . . идѹтъ

Present part. and gerundive: идѹщій, идя

Past: шѣлъ, шла, шло, шли

Past part. act. and gerundive: шедшій, шедши

(2) быть to be

Verbal noun: бытіе

Present: есть; сѹть

Past: былъ, была, было, были

Future: бѹду, бѹдешь, бѹдетъ, бѹдемъ, бѹдете, бѹдутъ

Future participle: бѹдущій. But v. § 44 (4), footnote.

Past participle: бывшій

Past gerundive: бывши от бывъ

Imperative: будь, бѹдѹте

- (3) Ёхать, to drive, has as its present form ёду, ёдешъ, ёдетъ, ёдемъ, ёдете, ёдутъ, and thence the gerundive ёдучи, the participle ёдущій, the imperative ёжай or ёжди; but in the past ёхалъ, ёхавъ, etc.; ёжать (iterative).

The present tense of быть is scarcely ever used. есть and суть only survive in definitions, and are then used for all the persons. E.g. Богъ есть истина God is the truth; otherwise, Пётръ очень мудръ Peter is very wise, Это моё а то твоё this is mine and that is yours. [v. § 86.]

The compounds of быть are peculiar. The future tense is -буду, e.g. забыть to forget, забуду.

пробыть to stay (perfective), пробывать (imperfective)

избыть, изывать to lose or squander

выбыть, выывать to retire, resign

добыть, добывать to earn

перебыть, переывать to frequent

прибыть, прибывать to arrive or increase; прибыль (fem.) profit

отбыть, отывать to depart or get rid of

убыть, убывать to decrease

III. *Obsolete forms.*

(1) здать, to build, has a reduplicated present зѣзжу, зѣждешъ, зѣждетъ, зѣждемъ, зѣждете, зѣждутъ; and thence зѣждущій, зѣждущи; and the imperative зижди (зиждь). For the rest it is like зная.

(2) There are four verbs in “m,” like the Latin *sum* and the Greek verbs in *μι*.

(α) **ВѢМЪ** I know (root **ВѢД***).

This is entirely obsolete; but one form survives in the expression **Богъ вѣсть** God knows.

The derivatives are numerous, e.g. **вѣдомый** an acquaintance, **вѣдомость** the gazette or the news.

The infinitive **вѣсть** is also a feminine noun, meaning "news"; the iterative form **вѣдать** is in common use in compound verbs; **-вѣдать** being the perfective and **-вѣдывать** the imperfective; the old imperative **вѣдь** survives as a conjunction, more or less equivalent to *voici*.

(β) **есмь**, *v. antea* under **быть**.

(γ) **ѣсть** to eat (root **ѣд**).

Present: **ѣмъ, ѣшь, ѣстѣ,† ѣдѣмъ, ѣдѣте, ѣдѣтъ**

Imperative (irregular): **ѣшь, ѣшьте**

Past: **ѣлъ, ѣла, ѣло, ѣли**

Part. and gerundives: **ѣдѣ, ѣдѣщій, ѣвши, ѣвшій, ѣдомый, -ѣденный**

(δ) **дать** to give (perfective). The present form (perfective future):—

дамъ, дашь, дастѣ, дадѣмъ, дадѣте, дадѣтъ

The imperfective forms are supplied by **давать**.
[v. § 53 (5).]

Imperative: **дай**

Past: **далъ, дала, далó, дали**

Part. and gerundives: **давши, давшій, данный**

* Greek *οἶδα*, English "I wot."

† Cf. Latin *est* he is, *ēst* he eats; German *ist* and *isst*.

§ 58. THE ASPECTS OF THE VERBS.

Preliminary.

In § 42 (2) (ii) the “aspects” of the Russian verb were mentioned. They could not be adequately explained until the accident of the verb had been fully treated.

To recapitulate: the verb in early Russian had a present, imperfect and aorist (or preterite) indicative, and a compounded perfect and pluperfect like the English “I have read,” and the Latin *gavisus sum*. There were some few traces even of a future, but no conjunctive or other moods.

Russian discarded all the inflections save that of the present, and modified the stem or root to express the same tenses; e.g. я свистѣлъ I whistled, is “j’ai sifflé”; я свистнулъ is “je sifflai”; я свисталъ is “je sifflais,” I was whistling; я свистывалъ I used to whistle (now and then).

Each of these “aspects” has its conjugation; and, thus, those Russian verbs which have all the aspects possess nearly the same richness as the Greek verb with its present infinitive and participle, aorist forms, perfect forms, etc.

The perfective regards the action accomplished or to be accomplished, not the process of doing it.

e.g. Учить-ли вашъ мальчикъ свои уроки?

Does your boy learn his lessons (as a rule)?

Нѣтъ, но онъ ихъ выучитъ сегодня is the perfective; there can be no present to an aorist or preterite. The present form is used as a perfect contemplating the completion of the act. The answer is: "No, but he will learn them to-day."

The answer might proceed: и такъ бѣдетъ ходѣтъ въ школу съ понедѣльника (i.e. the imperfective future) "and so will go to school from Monday next." Or again, я бѣду стоѣтъ ежеднѣвно на однѣмъ и томъ же мѣстѣ I shall stand every day at the same spot. Стѣну can also be used as the auxiliary, but signifies rather "I will begin to."

e.g. Въ бѣдущемъ годѣ ты стѣнешь рабѣтъ въ конторѣ.

Next year you will start working at the office.

The primary division, which very nearly all Russian verbs have, is into imperfective and perfective. Some have further forms, derived from either or both in certain cases, from the imperfective.

The *abstract*, e.g. рыба плаваетъ бѣстро the fish swims quickly (as a habit), ѣтотъ пловецъ плывѣтъ ѣчень хорошѣ this swimmer is swimming very well (at this instant).

The *inceptive*, e.g. болѣтъ to fall ill, заболѣтъ to fall ill gradually. The *iterative* or *habitual*, only used colloquially and in the past tense; e.g. Ходѣте-ли вы чѣсто въ театрѣ? Нѣтъ, тепѣрь не хожу, но когда-то хаживалъ. Do you often go to the theatre? No, I don't now; once I used to go occasionally. From the perfective the perfective form in -нуть [v. § 50, I.] has been

in some verbs specialized into the "instantaneous" or "semelfactive" aspect, an act done on a single occasion.

e.g. *Запрещено стучать въ окно.*

It is forbidden to knock at the window.

(Imperfective or iterative: *стучать, стучу́.*)

Кто это тамъ стучи́тъ въ дверь?

Who is that knocking at the door?

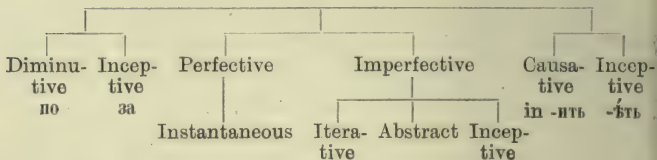
Я не могъ войти́, такъ сту́кнулъ.

I could not get in, so I knocked.

Further, certain verbs derived from adjectives have causative and inceptive forms in *-ить* and *-ѣть* [v. § 53].

		Intrans.	Trans.
e.g.	<i>зе́лѣный</i> green	<i>зе́ленѣтъ</i>	<i>зе́ленить</i>
	<i>сла́бый</i> weak	<i>сла́бѣтъ</i>	<i>сла́бить</i> etc.

Aspects.



Some verbs have no perfective. [v. § 59, IV.]

e.g. *предви́дѣтъ* to foresee

зави́сѣтъ to depend

содержа́тъ (содѣржатъ) to contain

принадлежа́тъ (-жу́, -жи́тъ) to belong

подлежа́тъ to be subject to

сочала́тъ (-ѣю) to regret

предсто́ять (-стою́) to impend

сочу́вствовать to sympathize

предчу́вствовать to forebode

§ 59. THE FORMATION OF THE ASPECTS.

I. *From original verbs.*

(1) First conjugation.

The simplest form of the uncompounded verb is imperfective.

e.g. печь to cook
жечь to burn
нести to carry, etc.

With these may be reckoned the primitives of the third and fourth conjugations.

e.g. слать	шлю	I send
бить	бью	I beat
спать	сплю	I sleep
гвать	гоню	I drive

There are some exceptions :—

e.g. лечь	лягу	I shall lie down
пасть	падѹ	I shall fall
сѣсть	сѣду	I shall sit down
стать	стану	I shall stand
дать	дамъ	I shall give

The perfectives of monosyllabic verbs are formed with prepositions, i.e. by compounding the verb.

The imperfectives of сѣсть, etc., are :—

сѣсть	садѣться
лечь	ложѣться
стать	становѣться (становлюсь, становѣтся)
дать	давать [v. § 53 (5)]
пасть	падать, падаю

But these verbs, *when uncompounded*, form iteratives out of the full root with an -ать suffix.

e.g. слать	to send	-сылать
брать	to take	-бирать
ждать	to wait	-ждать
драть	to tear	-дирать
звать	to call	-зывать
жечь	to burn	-жигать
тереть	to rub	-тирать
жать	to press	-жимать
жать	to reap	-жнать
ѣсть	to eat	-ѣдать
[вѣсть]	to know	вѣдать

Similarly in the third conjugation, in the *vocalic* stems.

e.g. бить	to beat	бивать
дуть	to blow	дувать
знать	to know	знавать, etc.

In the last-named verb a distinction must be made between -знаю, -знаешь, etc. (from -знать), and -знаю, -знаёшь, etc. (from -знавать). [v. § 53 (5).]

When these primitive verbs are compounded, the imperfective takes the derivative form in -ать, and the perfective the original form in -ть, -чь.

e.g. сжечь to burn down, сожгу I shall burn down,
сжигать (imperfective), сжигаю I am burning
down

помочь to help, помогу I shall help; помогать
(imperfective)

Similarly признать to recognise, признаю I shall recognise; but imperfective признавать, признаю I recognise.

	забыва́ть (imperf.)	забыва́ю I forget
<i>but</i>	забы́ть (perf.)	забу́ду I shall forget
	разсѣва́ть (imperf.)	разсѣва́ю I disperse
	разсѣ́ять (perf.)	разсѣ́ю I shall disperse
	умира́ть (imperf.)	умира́ю I am dying
	умерѣ́ть (perf.)	умру́ I shall die
	понима́ть (imperf.)	понима́ю I understand
	пойма́ть (perf.)	пойму́ I shall understand
		[v. § 49, II.]
	возстава́ть (imperf.)	возстаю́ I rise
	возста́ть (perf.)	возстану́ I shall rise
	выно́сить (imperf.)	вы́нести to carry away (perf.)

Observe.—прочѣсть, прочита́ть to read through (perfective); прочита́ывать (imperfective).

(2) Second conjugation in -нуть.

These verbs, as has been explained, are all either perfective or imperfective in themselves.

e.g. уга́снуть to be extinguished (imperf.), past tense уга́сь; засо́хнуть to dry, засо́хъ; кинуть to throw, imperf. кидáть, past tense кину́лъ.

Perfectives in -нуть are often called “instantaneous” or “semelfactive,” because they denote a single action.

e.g. крича́ть to shout, кри́кнуть to shout on one occasion
дерза́ть, дерзну́ть to venture

(3) Third conjugation.

The manner in which the original verbs of this conjugation form their perfectives has been stated in § 59, I. (1).

Derivative verbs in -ѣть are “inceptive” in meaning, e.g. зеленѣть, *viridesco*, to become green, and naturally imperfective. They must be compounded with a preposition to make them perfective.

Derivative verbs in -ать, -ять are naturally imperfective, and compounded with various prepositions become perfective, e.g. дѣлать to do, сдѣлать.

Most original verbs in -ать, such as писать to write, can only form their perfective by means of a preposition, as such verbs cannot vary their form any further, or make use of a suffixal stem, e.g. писать, perfective написать.

Thus напишѹ means “I shall write.”

To the third conjugation belong the *iteratives* in -ать and -ывать. The former are always accented on the termination, the latter always on the root which is in its fullest form.

e.g. -честь, -чту: читать to read (imperfective),
прочитать (perfective), чѣтываю (iterative)
I read here and there.

звать to call (perfective in compounds only),
e.g. созвать to call together (iterative созывать).

Verbs whose radical vowel is o change the o to a in forming the iterative.

e.g. ломать	to break	ла́мывать
бросать	to throw	бра́сывать
(abstract sense: бросить concrete)		

and even усвоить to appropriate усва́ивать

In some cases, the difference between the imperfective and iterative is merely accentual, the iterative termination -ать being always accented.

Imperfective.			Iterative.	
e.g. двѣгаться	move	онъ двѣжется	двѣгáть	-двѣгáль
бѣгать	run	бѣгаю	бѣгáть	-бѣгáль
ползать	creep	ползаю	ползáть	-ползáль
пáдать	fall	пáдаю	падáть	-падáль

This distinction only applies to some original verbs of the type of писать [v. § 52 (3)], in which the suffixal vowel -a- is dropped in the formation of the present; such verbs having a fixed accent in the imperfective on the root, and the infinitive termination -ать unaccented.

(4) Fourth conjugation.

Many of the original verbs in -ить or -ѣть, -ю, -ишь, have another form of conjugation in -ять, like the iteratives in -áть. In some cases the original form in -ить, -ѣть is perfective, the imperfective being in -ать (as was seen to be the rule in monosyllabic verbs like знать, мочь, беречь, знавать, -могáть, -берегáть); in others the original form in -ить is imperfective, and the alternative -ять or ать has an *abstract* meaning.

Again, some verbs in -ить derived from intransitive monosyllabic verbs, such as лечь, стать, etc., are causative.

Perfective.		Imperfective.
e.g. простѣть	to forgive *	прощáть
явѣть	show	явлáть

* Простѣться say farewell, простѣте good-bye.

Perfective.		Imperfective.
e.g. лиши́ть	deprive	лиша́ть
пусти́ть	permit	пуска́ть
ступи́ть	tread	ступа́ть
хвати́ть	seize	хвата́ть
купи́ть	buy	покупа́ть (distinguish купа́ть to bathe)
роди́ться	be born	ражда́ться*
наслади́ться	enjoy	наслажда́ться*
посѣти́ть	visit	посѣща́ть*
убѣди́ть	to convince	убѣжда́ть*

Imperfective.		
<i>Abstract or habitual.</i>		<i>Concrete meaning.</i>
e.g. лета́ть	fly	летѣ́ть [v. § 58]
плава́ть	swim	плывѣ́ть
бѣга́ть	run	бѣжа́ть (<i>but бѣга́ть iterative</i>)
сажа́ть	plant	сади́ть
лома́ть	break	ломѣ́ть

Similarly носи́ть	carry	нести́
води́ть	lead	вести́
вози́ть	bear	везти́
лази́ть	climb	лѣзѣ́ть
блиста́ть	gleam	блестѣ́ть
гоня́ть	drive	гнать

When these verbs are compounded, the derivative form in -ать, -ять is imperfective, the original form perfective.

e.g. отплыва́ть	отплы́ть	to swim away
убѣга́ть	убѣжа́ть	to run away

* Church Slav change of д to жд, and т to щ.

e.g. Я ломаю карандашъ.

I (generally) break pencils.

Медвѣдь ломится въ дверь.

The bear is breaking into the door.

Корабль отплывáетъ.

The ship is leaving port.

Лодка уже отплыла отъ берега.

The boat has left the shore.

Нѣмцы убѣгають отъ штыка.

Germans run away from the bayonet.

Собака схватила кость и убѣжала.

The dog snatched the bone and ran away.

Нѣмцы пришли во Францію съ тѣмъ чтобы грабить.

The Germans came into France to plunder.

Нѣмцы пришли въ Бельгію и ограбили всѣ города.

The Germans came into Belgium and plundered all the cities.

Thirdly, the alternative form in -ать, -ять may be iterative.

Imperfective.		Iterative.
e.g. хранѣть	keep	хранѣть
видѣть	see	видѣть
ударить	strike	ударѣть

In compound verbs the form in -а́ть, -я́ть is used for imperfectives, the form in -и́ть for perfectives.

e.g. Отвѣчу I shall answer.

Отвѣчаю I am answering.

Разорю ваши города и селѣнія.

I will destroy your cities and settlements.

Въ продолженіе двухъ мѣсяцевъ король разоря́лъ непріятельскіе города.

For two months the king had been destroying the hostile cities.

Generally the iteratives are formed in -ивать or -ывать, verbs in -ѣть taking -ывать.

e.g. говорѣть	speak	говори́вать
проси́ть	ask	пра́шивать
ходи́ть	go	ха́живать
гляди́ть	look at	глады́вать
ви́дѣть	see	ви́дывать

II. *The formation of the perfective in derivative verbs.*

As has been stated, derivative verbs end in -ѣть, -ать and -ить.

Most verbs in -ѣть are inceptive and naturally imperfective, and generally, if uncompounded, have no perfective.

e.g. слабе́ть to become weak

Verbs in -ать form the perfective by compounding, and this rule applies to original verbs like писа́ть, пишу́, пи́шетъ, as well as to derivatives, such as жела́ть, пожела́ть.

As to the choice of preposition, there is no general rule; на, разъ, по, о, у, вы, съ, etc., can all be used. Only practice can distinguish the perfectives from the compounds.

		Perfective.
e.g. дѣ́лать	to do	сдѣ́лать
жела́ть	to wish	позе́лать
владѣ́ть	to rule	овладе́ть
смотре́ть	to look	посмотрѣ́ть
ви́дѣть	to see	увидѣ́ть
писа́ть	to write	написа́ть
тра́тить	to lose	истра́тить

Verbs in -ить mostly have a secondary form -ять, which in the uncompounded verb has an iterative

meaning. Some uncompoundd imperfective verbs in -ить form their perfectives, like those in -ать, by compounding with a particle.

e.g. строить	to build	построить
грабить	to plunder	ограбить
сердиться	to be angry	разсердиться
тревожить	to disquiet	встревожить
платить	to pay	заплатить

Again no general rule can be stated.

III. *Aspects formed from a different root.*

Of these there are very few.

Perfective.		Imperfective.
e.g. идти	to go	ходить
поймать	to catch	ловить (<i>but</i> понять understand, понимать)
ударить	to strike	бить, and ударять
положить	to lay	класть (кладу)
взять	to take	брать

Concrete.		Abstract.	Iterative.
e.g. ехать	to drive	ѣздить	ѣзжать
слышать (слышу)	to hear	слыхать (слышю)	
дышать (дышитъ)	to breathe	дыхать (дышетъ)	

e.g. Я ѣзжу въ городъ каждый день.
I go to the city every day.

Я ѣхалъ домой съ вóзомъ.
I drove home (in a carriage).

Почтí ежеднёвно хожу пѣшкомъ домой, но
когда-то я ѣзжалъ вмѣстѣ съ бáриномъ.

Almost every day I walk home; but
sometimes I drove with the master.

IV. *The aspects of compound verbs.*

The general rule is that all compound verbs are perfective. The imperfective is formed by the iterative form in -а́ть, -я́ть, -ива́ть, -ива́ть; if a derivative form exists in -я́ть this serves as the imperfective, and the iterative in -а́ть, -я́ть, -ива́ть conserves the iterative meaning.

	Perfective.		Imperfective.
e.g.	вы́нести	to carry out	выно́сить
	выно́сить	to endure	вына́шивать
	объ́хать	to drive round	объ́зжать
	вы́везти	to cart out	вывози́ть
but	выводи́ть	to lead about	выва́живать
	вывози́ть	to take about (in a carriage)	ыва́живать
	вы́звать	to summon	вызыва́ть
	выи́грать	to gain at play	выи́грывать

Observe.—вы takes the accent, except in the imperfective, which retains the accent of the uncompounded verb. All other prepositions are unaccented, except in the past tenses and past participles passive of monosyllabic verbs, e.g. избра́нь chosen [v. § 49, II.], на́нять, про́далъ, etc.

e.g.	вы́йти	to go out	выходи́ть
	провести́	to pass (time)	прово́дить
	обнови́ть	to renew	обновля́ть
<i>Observe</i>	положи́ть	suppose	полага́ть
	уложи́ть	pack	укла́дывать
	доложи́ть	report (a fact)	докла́дывать

Observe:—

	Perfective.		Imperfective.
	выѣѣжѣть	to run away	выѣѣжѣть
<i>but</i>	выѣѣгѣть	to attain by a run	выѣѣгивѣть
	выѣѣти	to go away	выѣѣдѣть
<i>but</i>	выѣѣдѣть	to gain	выѣѣживѣть
	заѣѣхѣть (заѣѣду)	to go beyond	заѣѣжѣть
<i>but</i>	заѣѣзѣть	to tire out	заѣѣживѣть
	прѣѣвести	to lead through	прѣѣводѣть
<i>but</i>	прѣѣводѣть	to accompany	прѣѣвожѣть, or прѣѣживѣть

In some cases the only perfective is the semelfactive in -нѣть.

e.g.	дѣѣвѣнуть	to move	дѣѣвѣгѣть
	кѣѣивѣнѣть	to nod	кѣѣивѣть
	трѣѣонѣть	to touch	трѣѣогѣть
	шѣѣпнѣть	to whisper	шѣѣптѣть
	крѣѣикнѣть	to cry	крѣѣичѣть
	взѣѣдохнѣть	to sigh	взѣѣдыхѣть

In forming imperfectives the general rule is that the iterative form of the uncompounded verb is the stem of the imperfective of the compounded verb.

e.g.	прѣѣмѣдѣнить	to delay	прѣѣмѣдливѣть
	обѣѣманѣть	to deceive	обѣѣманывѣть
	погѣѣаснѣть*	to be extinguished	погѣѣасѣть
	погѣѣибнѣть*	to perish	погѣѣибѣть
	взгѣѣлянѣть	to look up	взгѣѣлѣдывѣть
	замѣѣкнѣть	to lock up	замѣѣкѣть

Observe.—тянѣть (imperfective) to pull, тягивѣть; but in compounds, прѣѣтянѣть to stretch forth, прѣѣтягивѣть. [v. § 50, I.]

* But past tense погѣѣибѣ, погѣѣасѣ.

e.g. Онъ вы́тянулъ о́громаго лѣща.

He pulled up a huge bream.

Ива́нъ Ива́нычъ тя́нетъ ля́мку до́браго семья́нина.

Iván Iványč works hard like a good family man [pulls the shoulder-strap].

Мой дру́гъ нео́днокра́тно вы́тяги́валъ ме́ня изъ т́руднаго по́ложѣнія.

My friend more than once has pulled me out of an awkward situation.

Other instances are :—

Perfective.

узна́ть

acknowledge

осла́бѣть

to become weak

осла́бнуть (semelfactive)

повѣ́рить

believe

поручи́ть

to commission

продол́жить

to continue

помѣ́тить

to mark

убѣ́жать

to run away

переплы́ть

to swim through

уѣ́хать

to drive away

(in a carriage)

отогна́ть

to drive away

описа́ть

to describe

пригото́вить

to prepare

придѣ́лать

to affix

приже́чь

to scorch

приказа́ть

to decree

прими́рить

to reconcile

избра́ть

to choose

Imperfective.

узнава́ть (узнаю́)

[§ 53 (5)]

осла́бѣва́ть

повѣ́рять

поруча́ть

продолжа́ть

помѣ́чать

убѣ́гать

переплыва́ть

уѣ́зжать

отгона́ть

описыва́ть

приготовля́ть

придѣ́лывать

прижига́ть

приказы́вать

прими́рять

избира́ть

The learner must *not* confuse those verbs derived from *compound nouns or adjectives*. Such verbs are naturally imperfective, as the formative stem contains the particle, which is not added to the verb.

	Imperfective.	Perfective.
e.g. безъ поко́я without rest	безпоко́ить disturb	обезпоко́ить
ра́зумъ reason	разу́мѣть understand	уразу́мѣть
обѣ́дъ dinner	обѣ́дать dine	пообѣ́дать
забо́та trouble	забо́титься	озабо́титься
наслѣ́д-ство inheritance	наслѣ́довать	унаслѣ́довать
предчу́вствіе foreboding	предчу́вствовать	
сочу́вствіе sympathy	сочу́вствовать [v. § 58]	
безъ люде́й without people	безлю́дѣть to become depopulated (обезлю́дѣть perf.)	

The accentuation of compounded verbs is that of the simple, save with **вы**, v. § 59, IV.

Except **вто́рить** to repeat

повтори́ть to repeat, imperfective **повтори́ть**

ясни́ться to clear up (of the weather)

изъясни́ть explain, imperfective **изъясни́ть**

V. *Causatives and inceptives.*

As stated in § 53 (1) and § 54, verbs derived from adjectives have transitive forms in **-и́ть**, and intransitives in **-ѣ́ть**.

e.g. **си́ній** blue, **снѣ́ть** to turn blue, **снѣ́ть** to make blue

мя́гкій soft, **мягчи́ть** and **размягча́ть**

сла́дкій sweet, **улади́ть** and **улажда́ть**

молодо́й young, **молоде́ть** to grow young, **молоди́ть** to make young, etc., etc.

Similarly, transitive verbs in -ить are derived from intransitive primitives.

e.g. лечь to lie down	положить to lay
сѣсть to sit down	посадить to seat
стать to stand (ста́ну)	станови́ться to stand,
	and ста́вить to place

e.g. Я поста́вилъ ва́зу на коло́нну.
I put the vase on the column.

VI. по and за as forming depreciatory and inceptive verbs.

по when compounded with some verbs gives a depreciatory or diminutive sense.

e.g. мы́ться to wash
 помы́ться to wash here and there
 помути́ть to create squabbles
 поку́ривать, покури́ть, to smoke occasionally
 поку́шать (perfective поѣсть) to eat by snacks
 покáрмливать (покорми́ть) to feed slightly
 пока́чивать to waver (покача́ть perfective,
 покачну́ть to shake)
 пока́шливать to cough a little (пока́шливать)

за often creates another inceptive aspect, to begin doing.

e.g. зава́ривать (завари́ть perfective) to simmer
 завѣ́шивать (завѣ́сить) to veil, begin veiling
 засвиста́ть to begin whistling
 засме́яться to begin laughing
 засыха́ть (засохну́ть) to start drying
 затмева́ть (затми́ть) to grow dusk, etc.
 затону́ть to start sinking (зата́пливать),
 затопи́ть perfective
 засѣ́вать (засѣ́ять) to begin to sow

But compounds with *за* are often perfective.

e.g. Русскіе затопіли* корабль въ Севастопольской бухтѣ.

The Russians sank the ship in the Bay of Sebastopol.

§ 60. REFLEXIVE AND PASSIVE VERBS.

As stated previously [v. *infra*, § 10, § 42 (2) (i) and (ii)] the Russian verb is very defective; it possesses only one conjugated tense, and no subjunctives.

The passive is mostly supplied by the reflexive, *ся* and *сь* being added to the terminations [v. § 41, V. (1)]; *ся* being added to consonantal terminations, *сь* to vocalic. This *ся* is nearly always unaccented; there are very few exceptions.

e.g. я дѣлаюсь I become, am made, дѣлается, дѣлавшись, etc.

родиться to be born, родится, родился, родились
or родились.

Deponent verbs also exist, i.e. reflexive forms in which the reflexive idea has vanished, or is not expressed or required in translation.

e.g. я моюсь I wash myself, I wash
король вернулся домой the King has returned home
стыдиться to feel ashamed †

* Distinguish затопить, затопленный (затоплять) to sink; and затопить, затопленный, затопливать, to heat.

† Distinguish стыдъ shame, стыдиться; and стыть (perfective), стынуть (imperfective) to be cold.

* Similarly in French “se suicider,” “s’approcher de” are always reflexive or deponent.

But when a verb has as its express object the same person as the subject, the enclitic form *ся* and *сь* (which are *always* sounded *сá* and *сь* [v. § 41, V. (1)]), are *not* used, the full form *себя* taking their place.

e.g. Алексѣй не владѣеть собой.

Alexis has no self-control.

Мальчикъ взлѣзъ на крышу и убитъ.

The boy crawled on to the roof and was killed.

Онъ покóнчилъ собой.

He committed suicide [ended by himself].

Онъ оговорился что его цифры могутъ быть невѣрны и себя оградилъ этимъ отъ всякихъ нареканій.

He defended himself on the ground that his figures might not be correct, and guarded himself on this score from all blame.

Ты не испóльзовалъ своего положенія а я провёлъ своё время безполéзнымъ образомъ.

You made no use of your position, and I spent my time uselessly.

Я всегда имѣю при себѣ портрётъ жены.

I always have my wife's portrait with me.

The Passive is also expressed in two other ways:—

(1) With a passive participle and the verb *быть* as in English.

e.g. Комната была убрана цвѣтами.

The room was decorated with flowers.

(2) With the verb in the third person plural, with the indefinite meaning of “one,” “*on*,” “*man*.”

e.g. Зову́тъ меня́ по фами́лии Моnáховымъ.

My family name is Monákhov [they call me]

The reflexive forms are never used loosely to express “one another.” Thus [v. § 82, IV.] :—

Рабо́чие Росси́и, А́нглии, Фра́нции и Герма́нии
убива́ютъ другъ дру́га.

The workmen of Russia, England, France and
Germany are slaying one another.

Слѣ́довали другъ за дру́гомъ.

They followed each other.

THE NUMERALS.

§ 61. PRELIMINARY.

The inflection of the Russian numerals is at first sight very difficult. The problem can be simplified.

(a) In the first place, nearly all the numerals are nouns, and are therefore followed by the genitive plural.

(β) Secondly, being nouns, when compounded, e.g. двѣ́сти (two hundred), each part follows its own declension.

(γ) Thirdly, два, три, четы́ре, 2, 3 and 4, take the equivalent of the old dual, i.e. the genitive singular.

(δ) Fourthly, the noun in ordinals is governed by the last element of the numeral.

e.g. пять козъ five goats

but двѣ козы́ two goats (коза́, plural козы́)

три рублѣ́ three roubles (plural рублѣ́)

три́дцать три поѣзда́ thirty-three trains

Also сто one hundred

двѣ́сти two hundred (Old Slav dual termination)

три́ста three hundred (gen. sing.)

пятьсо́тъ five hundred (gen. plural)

Other notes on the use of the numerals will be found in § 81.

§ 62. I.—*The Numerals 1–10.*

Arabic.	Cardinal.	Part of speech.	Ordinal.	Collective.*	Fraction.
1	одинъ	Adj.	пе́рвый		
2	два	„	второ́й	дво́е, па́ра	полови́на
3	три	„	тре́тій†	тро́е	тре́ть ‡
4	четы́ре	„	четве́ртый	че́тверо	че́тверть‡
5	пять	Noun	пя́тый	пя́теро	пя́тая§
6	шесть	„	шесто́й	ше́стеро	шестáя§
7	семь	„	седьмо́й	се́меро	etc.
8	во́семь	„	восьмо́й	во́сьмеро	
9	де́вять	„	девя́тый	де́вятеро	
10	де́сять	„	деся́тый	де́сятеро	

These are the ten simple forms.

* The most common are дво́е, тро́е, че́тверо, пя́теро, се́меро ; but all are equally common in the form двѣ́о́е, втрѣ́о́е, etc., meaning 2nd, twice, three times as much. Families are thus designated : у него́ дво́е, тро́е, че́тверо, дѣтей : пять, шесть, семь, etc., челове́къ дѣтей ; of an assembly, ихъ бу́детъ пять, etc., челове́къ.

† Declined like барáний [v. § 34 (3)].

‡ Feminines in и.

§ Supply часть part. All the other fractions are similarly formed.

|| Very rare.

Одинъ is declined exactly like самъ [v. § 41, VIII.]; the vowel “и” drops out.

Thus—одинъ, одно́, одна́, одного́, одной́, etc.

	<i>Plural.</i>	
	Masc. and Neut.	Fem.
e.g. Nom.	оди́и	оди́ѣ
Gen. Loc.	оди́ихъ	оди́ихъ
Dat.	оди́имъ	оди́имъ
Instr.	оди́ими	оди́ими

The plural means “some,” cf. English “the ones.” Both forms, оди́и, оди́ѣ, are generally sounded alike (оди́и).

e.g. Вѣ́дъ на э́тихъ по́лкахъ оста́лось то́лько де́сять кни́гъ.

There are only ten books left on these shelves.

У менѣ́ оста́лось ли́шь три ру́бля́.

I have only three roubles left.

Какъ на бѣ́дѣ у менѣ́ оста́лось то́лько три яи́ца́.

Unluckily I have only three eggs left.

два, три, четы́ре are declined as follows:—

	Masc. and Neut.		Fem.	
e.g. Nom.	два	двѣ́	три	четы́ре
Gen. Loc.	двѣ́хъ		трѣ́хъ	четы́рехъ
Dat.	двѣ́мъ		трѣ́мъ	четы́ремъ
Instr.	двѣ́ми		трѣ́ми	четы́рьми

пять to де́сять are regular nouns like кость, часть, etc.

e.g. Nom.	пять
Gen. Dat. Loc.	пяти́
Instr.	пятью́

But, as nouns, the numerals are only followed by the genitive in the nominative or accusative; in oblique

cases they take the case of the nouns ; the numeral is attracted to the case of the noun.

оба, обоѣ both, is declined similarly to два.

	Masc. and Neut.	Fem.
e.g. Nom.	оба	обоѣ
Gen. Loc.	обоихъ	обоихъ
Dat.	обоимъ	обоимъ
Instr.	обоими	обоими

II.—*The Numerals 11–90.*

Arabic.	Cardinal.	Part of speech.	Ordinal.
11	одиннадцать	Noun	одиннадцатый
12	двѣнадцать	„	двѣнадцатый (collective дюжина)
13	тринадцать	„	тринадцатый
14	четырнадцать	„	четырнадцатый
15	пятнадцать	„	пятнадцатый
16	шестнадцать	„	шестнадцатый
17	семнадцать	„	семнадцатый
18	восемнадцать	„	восемнадцатый
19	девятнадцать	„	девятнадцатый
20	двадцать	„	двадцатый
21	двадцать одинъ [v. § 61 (δ)]		двадцать пер́вый
22	двадцать два, etc.	„	двадцать второ́й, etc.
30	тридцать	Noun	тридцатый
40	сорокъ	„	сороково́й
50	пятьдеся́тъ*	„	пятидеся́тый
60	шестьдеся́тъ	„	шестидеся́тый
70	се́мьдеся́тъ	„	се́мидеся́тый
80	во́семьдеся́тъ	„	во́сьмидеся́тый
90	девяно́сто	„	девяно́стый

For the fractions, *v. пять.*

* Sounded pidd'ísyát'.

The cardinals from 11–90 are mere compositions of the simple forms and *десять* (10).

(1) The “teens” are formed by saying one-on-ten, two-on-ten; the preposition *на* is accented, except in *одиннадцать* and *четырнацать*, and *десять* is contracted to *дцать*.

The numbers 11–19 are all declined like *десять*.

e.g. Nom.	се́мнáдцать
Gen. Dat. Loc.	се́мнáдцати
Instr.	се́мнáдцатью

(2) The numbers 20 and 30 are similar compounds, two-ten, three-ten. They are declined thus:—

Nom.	три́дцать
Gen. Dat. Loc.	три́дцати
Instr.	три́дцатью

(3) *сорок* (40), and *девяно́сто* (90), are nouns of the first conjugation. *сорок* accents the termination throughout, e.g. *сорока́*, *сороку́*, etc.

(4) The cardinals 50, 60, 70, 80 decline both parts *separately and similarly*.

e.g. Nom. Voc. Acc.	се́мьдесятъ
Gen. Loc. Dat.	семи́десяти
Instr.	се́мьюдесятью

As though the two words were not written together.

III.—*The Numerals 100–1,000,000.*

Arabic.	Cardinal.	Part of speech.	Ordinal.
100	сто	Noun	со́тый*
200	двѣсти	Adj. & noun (joined)	двухсо́тый
300	три́ста	„ „	трѣхсо́тый
400	четы́реста	„ „	четырёхсо́тый

* Collective *со́тня*.

<i>Arabic.</i>	<i>Cardinal.</i>	<i>Part of speech.</i>	<i>Ordinal.</i>
500	пятьсѡтъ	Two nouns	пятисѡтый
600	шестьсѡтъ	„ „	шестисѡтый
700	семьсѡтъ	„ „	семисѡтый
800	восемьсѡтъ	„ „	восемьсѡтый
900	девятьсѡтъ	„ „	девятисѡтый
1,000	ты́сяча	Noun	ты́сячный
2,000	двѣ́ ты́сячи	Adj. & noun	двухты́сячный
3,000	три ты́сячи	„ „	трѣхты́сячный
4,000	четы́ре ты́сячи and so on	„ „	четырёхты́сячный
60,000	шестьдеся́тъ ты́сячъ	Three nouns	шестидеся́ти- ты́сячный
100,000	сто ты́сячъ	Nouns	сто- о́г ста- ты́сячный
1,000,000	милліо́нъ	Noun	милліо́нный

сто is declined as follows:—

Singular. Nom. Voc. Acc. сто
Gen. ста, etc.

Similarly девяно́сто. But when сто is used in a long figure, with others, all the oblique cases are uniformly ста (the genitive); and similarly девяно́сто.

Plural. Nom. Voc. Acc. ста
Gen. сотъ
Dat. тамъ
Instr. ста́ми
Loc. стахъ

All the compound numerals in this division decline each part separately.

e.g. двѣ́сти, двухъсѡтъ, двумстамъ, двумста́ми,
двухстахъ, etc.

ты́сяча is a regular feminine noun; but the instrumental singular is sometimes ты́сячью, as though it were a noun of the third declension.

сто, со́рокъ, девяно́сто, when declined with nouns, extend the genitive ending to the dative and instrumental, optionally to the locative.

e.g. Nom. Acc. сто со́рокъ листьо́въ 140 leaves (of paper)

Gen. ста сорока́ листьо́въ

Dat. ста сорока́ листьа́мъ

Instr. ста сорока́ листьа́ми

Loc. ста сорока́ листьа́хъ

IV. (1) *Frequency.* Examples of use:—

оди́нъ разъ once, or одна́жды

два ра́за twice, or два́жды

три ра́за thrice, or три́жды

четы́ре ра́за four times, etc., or четы́режды

пять разъ [v. § 24 (4)]

This is the only and regular way of forming this series.

(2) *Distributives* are formed with the preposition по, e.g. по́ два, по́ три, по́ четы́ре; but with all other numbers in the dative: по́ пяти, по́ сту, по́ сороку́, по́ девяносту́ (or по́ сорока́).

(3) *Nought* is нуль, masculine.

(4) *The noun is governed by the numeral immediately preceding, however high the whole numeral may be.* In the nominative, or accusative, the noun thus enumerated is in the singular after оди́нъ; gen. sing. after два, три,

четыре; gen. plural after all the others. In the oblique cases, i.e. all except the accusative and nominative, the numeral and noun alike are in concord in the appropriate oblique case.

e.g. двадцать одинъ фунтъ 21 pounds

тридцать три коня 33 horses

меньше двадцати пяти минутъ less than 25 minutes

(5) *Decimals.*

нуль целыхъ девять десятыхъ копейки съ версты.

·9 kop. to the verst (nought wholes and nine tenths . . .).

Отъ одной до ста шестидесяти вёрстъ, по одной целой, четыре тысячи триста семьдесятъ пять десяти тысячныхъ копейки съ пассажира.

From 1 to 160 versts at 1·4375 kop. per passenger per verst.

(6) *Compound ordinals. Only the last numeral is declined.*

e.g. Двадцать девятого декабря (мѣсяца) въ тысяча восемьсотъ девяносто седьмомъ году.

On the 29th Dec. 1914. [v. § 24 (1).]

Въ сто девяносто седьмомъ году до рождества Христова.

In 197 B.C.

Гостиница съ болѣе чѣмъ двумястами номерами.

A hotel with over 200 rooms.

Цѣна комнатъ понижается лѣтомъ до пятидесяти процѣнтовъ.

The price of rooms is reduced in the summer by 50%.

As a complete example, 2,367,134·8295 aršins (аршинъ a measure of length about a yard) would be thus declined:—

Nom. Два миллиона, триста шестьдесятъ семь тысячъ, сто тридцать четыре тысячъ, восемь тысячъ двести девяносто пять десятитысячныхъ аршина.

Acc. As genitive or nominative; in this case as nominative.

Gen. Двухъ миллионовъ, трёхсотъ шестидесяти семи тысячъ, ста тридцати четырёхъ тысячъ, восьми тысячъ двухсотъ девяноста пяти десятитысячныхъ аршина.*

Dat. Двумъ миллионамъ трёмстамъ шестидесяти семи тысячамъ ста (or сту) тридцати четырёмъ тысячамъ, восьми тысячамъ девяноста (or девяносту) пяти десятитысячнымъ аршина.

Instr. Двуми миллионами тремястами шестью-десятью, семью тысячами, ста тридцатью четырьмя тысячами, восьмью тысячами девяноста (or девяностомъ) пятью десятитысячными аршина.

Loc. Двухъ миллионахъ трёхстахъ шести-десяти, семи тысячахъ, ста тридцати четырёхъ тысячъ, восьми тысячахъ девяноста (or девяностъ) пяти десятитысячныхъ аршина.

(7) два, три, четыре, *in the nominative or accusative*, are followed by the noun in the genitive singular or by the nominative or genitive plural of adjectives.

* Gen. sing., the decimal being expressed by $\frac{8295}{10000}$ of an aršin. The last numeral always governs the noun.

This arbitrary rule is based on the fact that два, три, четыре in the older language took the dual; the dual having become obsolete, use was made of whatever inflections most closely approximated to it.

e.g. Nom. два вы́сокихъ (or -ie) солда́та two tall soldiers

Gen. двухъ вы́сокихъ солда́тъ

Dat. двумъ вы́сокимъ солда́тамъ

Instr. двумя́ вы́сокими солда́тами

Loc. двухъ вы́сокихъ солда́тахъ

With nouns only used in the plural, there are alternative forms, дво́и, трóи; otherwise the collectives are used.

e.g. воро́та the gates че́тверо воро́тъ four gates

But the ordinary collectives, with the genitive plural, may be used instead of дво́и, трóи, че́тверо.*

дво́е and трóе are declined like о́ба, but accent the terminations ихъ, имъ, ими.

че́тверо and all the other similar collectives form the oblique cases like plural adjectives, accenting the termination, e.g. пяте́рыхъ, etc.

(8) полови́на, standing by itself, is "a half."

It is also used in composition with other words, e.g. полто́ра $1\frac{1}{2}$ (for полъ-вторá; cf. German, andert-halb $1\frac{1}{2}$, dritthalb $2\frac{1}{2}$); also in words like полфу́нта half a pound, полчасá half an hour, полго́да half a year, etc. For further notes, v. § 81, IV.

* So, too, in Latin: *templum*, *tria templa*; but *aedes*, plural *trinae aedes*.

Both parts are separately declined; all the oblique cases of *полъ* being *полу*.

	<i>Masc. Neut.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
	1½ aršins	1½ versts
e.g. N.V.A.	полторá арші́на	полторы́ версты
Gen.	полúтора аршинъ*	полúторы вёрсть
Dat.	{ полúтора } { полúтору } арші́намъ	полúторѣ верста́мъ
Instr.	{ полúтора } { полúторымъ } арші́нами	полúторою верста́ми
Loc.	{ полúтора } { полúторѣ } арші́нахъ	полúторѣ верста́хъ

*Singular.**Plural.*

Half-pound

N.V.A.	полуфúнта	полуфúнты
Gen.	полуфúнта	полуфúнтовъ
Dat.	полуфúнту	полуфúнтамъ
Instr.	полуфúнтомъ	полуфúнтами
Loc.	полуфúнтѣ	полуфúнтахъ

However, usage varies with regard to *полторá*, and the masculine forms are often employed with feminine nouns. The noun-component is declined in full in compounds like *полуфúнта*, and bears and retains its own accent.

Пóлдень and *пóлночь*, “noon” and “midnight,” are declined *полúдня*, *полúночи*, and so on, the accent always resting on the second syllable, and the *полу* being invariable.

Similarly, *полторáста* 150, *полúтораста*, in all oblique cases.

* v. § 24 (4).

Other fractions are expressed much as in English.

e.g. двѣ съ половиной бутылки two and a half bottles
 три́дцать пять и семна́дцать три́дцать восьмы́хъ
 $35\frac{17}{38}$
 четы́ре и три че́тверти $4\frac{3}{4}$

(9) *Dates.*

The date and the month are put into the genitive, and the year, if accompanying, into the ordinal with the genitive го́да (годъ) year. If the year stands by itself, the locative въ годѹ́ is used.

In *dates* the plural of годъ is лѣ́та (лѣ́то summer).

e.g. два́дцать пята́го декаб́ря ты́сяча девяты́хъ
 четве́ртого го́да, 25th December 1904
 въ ты́сяча восе́мьхъ пята́дцатомъ годѹ́
 in 1815
 ше́стьдеся́тъ лѣ́тъ томѹ́ наза́дъ sixty years ago

Numerals preceding the noun are exact denotations; when they follow, approximate.

e.g. го́да че́резъ три́ in about three years' time
 по́слѣ́ трѣ́хъ лѣ́тъ after three years

§ 63. THE ADVERBS.

The adverbial forms of adjectives are simply the neuter singular predicative, excepting adjectives in -скій, which form -ски; e.g. стрóго sternly, до́рого dearly, ра́ньше earlier, эконо́мически economically.

Other adverbs will be learnt in the course of reading.

§ 64. THE PREPOSITIONS.

These are very commonly used in Russian, and are dealt with in §§ 70-80 in the Syntax.

§ 65. THE CONJUNCTIONS.

The conjunctions are best acquired in the course of reading. As the Russian verb possesses no moods, and as there is no inversion of sentences, the conjunctions present no difficulty. Some few may be noticed here.

и "and."

да "yes," is also used for "and," but has a corroborative strengthening significance, and belongs to the older language.

и also is used in a sentence to mean "also."

а "but" or "and," when used in contradistinction rather than conjunction.

но "but" in contradistinction, or denial.

ещё "also."

или "or." **или—или**, "either . . . or."

ни—ни "neither—nor." As will be seen in § 85, these require a double negative, i.e. a negatived verb as well.

§ 66. THE INTERJECTIONS.

These are best learnt from reading. Russian being a phonetic language, these primitive sounds are written as pronounced, not conventionally as in English; e.g. "hush" for "sh," "ough!" for pain.

e.g. in Russian **ухъ!** **охъ!** **ахъ!** etc.

Other interjections are developments from recognised words, e.g. "Lo" (from "look").

So, too, in Russian **убы!** woe!

SYNTAX.

§ 67. PRELIMINARY.

In comparison with most other European languages Russian syntax presents comparatively few difficulties. The order is much the same as in English—subject, verb, object, adverbs.

There are no subjunctives, the use of which becomes technical as in French; gender is in the main sex, or determined by the suffix. Thus in French “*sa majesté le roi*” is feminine, and a following sentence must run: “*elle a bien voulu.*” In Russian, *Его Императорское* Величество Царь соизволилъ*; the verb is in the masculine, though *Величество* is neuter.

In German, again, “*das Mädchen*” the girl, is supposed to be followed by neuter pronouns; in Russian, as in English, child *дитя* (neuter), *лицо* person (neuter) may be followed by *онъ, она́*, according to sense. Or again, *десять* is feminine, but “there remained ten” (neuter, *general* impersonal sense) is *осталось десять*. [v. § 62, I.]

The Russian richness in inflections gives the language a freedom of order such as was possessed by ancient Latin and Greek. But whereas the order of Latin was conventionalised and stiffened, Russian retains the natural order of words, with the liberty of slight transposition for emphasis; adjectives precede, unless otherwise desired; in fact, much the same considerations obtain as in English. But ambiguity ceases, the inflection defining the relations.

* v. § 83, IV.

In one respect, as stated in § 33, Russian shows less flexibility in the formation of compound nouns. German (amongst modern languages) is the most adaptable, e.g. "Eisenbahnfremdverkehr-verbindungen" Railway-foreign-traffic-connections. English tacitly has the same power, with some ambiguity, e.g. The Foreign Office Clerks' Providence Society; the wooden baby's chair. In Russian all such relations *must* be stated by means of adjectives; e.g. желѣзная доро́га the railway, военные запáсы war supplies, на полицѣйскомъ хранѣ́нии in police detention.

§ 68. THE ARTICLE.

The article does not exist in Russian. Nevertheless *тотъ* is occasionally used for the definite article, and *о́динъ* for the indefinite, where the sentence requires amplification.

e.g. In the folk-tales :—

Жи́лъ-былъ о́динъ бѣ́дный вдовѣ́ць.

There once lived a poor widower.

То́тъ са́мый торго́вецъ кото́рый мнѣ́ про́далъ
велосипе́дъ совѣ́туе́тъ тепѣ́рь мѣ́ня купи́ть
мотосикле́тъ.

The same dealer who sold me a bicycle now recommends me to buy a motor-cycle.

§ 69. THE CASES.

I. *The Nominative*.—As in all languages, the nominative is used for the subject of the sentence. It can *never* be governed by any preposition.

II. *The Vocative* has survived only a very few *strictly ecclesiastical* phrases.

e.g. Бóже	from Богъ God
Господи	from Господь Lord
О́тче	from Оте́цъ Father
Христé	from Христóсъ Christ
Кня́же	from Князь Prince
Иисýсе	from Иисýсъ Jesus
Сýне	from Сынъ the Son
Царю́	from Царь Tsar
Влады́ко	from Влады́ка Lord

In modern Russian the nominative takes its place.

III. *The Accusative* is properly the case to denote the direct object; e.g. Jack (nominative) built a house (accusative) **Ива́нъ постро́илъ домъ.**

However, in modern Russian, except in the singular of the second declension, special accusative forms no longer exist. [v. § 13.]

Hence a rule has sprung up that, *except* for nouns of the second declension in the singular, the objective case shall be the genitive whenever the object is a living being; also, without any exception, whenever the sentence is negative (in which event the genitive is really partitive; e.g. "I did not see him" is equivalent to "I saw nothing *of* him" *). In every case the nominative form is used.

e.g. **Принеси́ сюда́ я́блоки.**
 Bring the apples here.
Приведи́ за́втра твоего́ дру́га.
 Bring your friend to-morrow.

* Cf. in modern Spanish the use of *á* when the object is a person, e.g. "él conduzo *á* Juan" he brought John.

Я не ви́дѣлъ чемодана.

I did not see the portmanteau.

Она́ не нашла́ ло́шади.

She did not find the horse.

Никогд́а не поймаетъ ры́бы.

You never catch a fish.

Я привёлъ двухъ лошаде́й.

I have brought two horses.

Besides this very limited use as the objective case, this accusative case, but never its genitive substitute, is found with the following meaning: to indicate duration in space or time.

e.g. Я ждалъ теб́я всё у́тро, цѣ́лый день, всю ночь, всю неде́лю, полчас́а.

I was waiting for you all the morning, the whole day, all the night, all the week, half an hour.

Я гуля́лъ три часа́ и прошёлъ шесть вёрстъ.

I walked for three hours and went six versts.

Я прошёлъ всё разсто́йніе ме́жду Варша́вой и Кра́ковомъ.

I went all the distance between Warsaw and Cracow.

Лётчикъ пролетѣ́лъ полови́ну пу́ти къ на́шему помѣ́стью.

The airman flew half the way to our country house.

IV. *The Genitive.*

In modern Russian the genitive is used for a variety of purposes. The simple genitive indicates the relationship of possession between two substantives.

In English there are two methods of indicating the genitive: the possessive case in *s*, and the preposition *of*.

(i) The simple genitive is used in three distinct ways: (*a*) subjective, (*β*) objective, (*γ*) defining.

e.g. (*a*) Wilson's house, i.e. Wilson has a house.
(In such cases an active verb may be substituted.)

Cæsar's hatred, i.e. Cæsar hates.

(*β*) Henry IV.'s assassin, i.e. Henry IV. *was* assassinated.

The torpedoing of the *Formidable*, i.e. the *Formidable* was torpedoed. (I.e. a passive verb may be substituted.)

(*γ*) A man of great talent, i.e. a greatly talented man.

In the last case an adjective may be substituted, and such phrases are really *inversions* of adjectives.

These subjective and objective genitives may be compounded.

e.g. U 21's torpedoing of the *Formidable*, i.e. U 21 torpedoed the *Formidable*.

In other languages there is great ambiguity on this score. In Latin the genitive is used both subjectively and objectively: thus "Cæsaris odium" may mean either that Cæsar hates, or that Cæsar is hated; so, too, in French, "la haine de César."

In English there are irregular attempts to distinguish by means of the two forms, e.g. "Cæsar's hatred," or "the hatred of Cæsar."

Lastly, a subjective or objective genitive may be general or particular, permanent or casual. In the former event, an adjective can in very many cases be substituted.

e.g. God's love = the Divine love.

The king's banner = the royal banner.

But one does not speak (except jokingly) of the "royal pocket-handkerchief" or "the 'divine' love (of Zeus) for Semele."

In Russian we find the simplicity of French with the accuracy attempted by English, which has a rich stock of adjectival forms.

(1) *Subjective genitives* (nearly always possessive).

When *general*, the adjective of the governing noun is used; when *particular*, the genitive.

e.g. Нога слона раздавила чéрепъ тигра.

The elephant's leg shattered the tiger's skull.

(Possessive genitive.)

Нога слона почти безъ волось.

The elephant's leg is almost hairless.

(Generic genitive.)

Слоновая кость стоить дорого.

Ivory [literally, elephant's bone] is dear.

Кавайльакъ, убійца Генри́ха четвёртаго.

Cavaillac, the assassin of Henry IV.

(Objective.)

Иоáнновы [наёмные] убійцы.

Iván (the Terrible's) [hired] assassins.

(Subjective.)

Пѣтъкины дни тяну́лись одноо́бразно.

Pétya's days dragged on monotonously.

(Subjective and general.)

Имени́ны Госуда́ря.

The Emperor's birthday (as a mere fact).

Госуда́ревы имени́ны.

The Emperor's birthday (generalized, e.g. as a public holiday).

Зака́тъ со́лнца.

Sunset (as a particular fact on a certain day).

Со́лнечный зака́тъ.

Sunset (as a natural phenomenon).

Солда́тская свирѣ́пость.

Soldiers' savagery (in general).

But Свирѣ́пость солдатъ.

The soldiers' savagery (in particular).

Входъ въ дво́рецъ.*

The entrance of the palace (in particular).

But Дво́рцовые вхо́ды стро́го охра́няются солда́тами.

Palace entrances are strictly guarded by soldiers (in general).

Доро́га (or шоссе́) къ Москвѣ́; отъ Москвѣ́.

The Moscow high-road (direction to or from).

* I.e. in a direction; cf. English "the entrance into the station." But in French only "l'entrée de la gare," "la route de Versailles,"

Москóвскія дорóги óчень хороші.

The Moscow roads are very fine.

Морскóе дно.

The bottom of the sea (generally).

Дно мóря.

The bottom of the sea (particularly).

Я жилъ въ отцóвскомъ дóмѣ.

I lived in my father's house (with my parents).

Я жилъ въ дóмѣ отцá.

I lived in my father's house (i.e. his, not mine or Mr. Smith's).

(2) *Objective genitives.*

These, too, may be general or particular, but the word in the genitive cannot be adjectivally expressed.

However, Russian avoids ambiguity by using the genitive or any other case with a suitable preposition, e.g. such as would be required by the verb corresponding to the governing noun.

e.g. Крестья́нская любóвь къ пёстрымъ украше́ніямъ.

The peasant love of gaudy ornaments
(general proposition).

Любóвь это́го мужчи́ны къ же́нщинамъ.

This man's love of woman (in particular).

Не́нависть къ Цéзарю.

The hatred of Cæsar (felt against Cæsar).

(Contrast не́нависть Цéзаря the hate Cæsar felt.)

У него́ сильная любовь къ искусству.

He has a great love of art.

Убийство Эдуарда второго.

The murder of Edward II.

Надежды Пёти на повыше́нія.

* Peter's hopes of promotion (in particular).

(Пётины in general.)

Разска́зчикъ этой ска́зки.

The narrator of this fairy tale.

Ска́зочный ры́царь.

A fairy knight.

In conclusion.—(1) The possessive or other adjectival form must be substituted for the noun in the genitive in all phrases, where the sense is generalized.

(2) When the genitive is objective, the relationship is usually more closely defined by a proper preposition; but the possessive adjective is almost always inadmissible.

(3) In Russian, except for the proclitic pronouns *е́го, е́я, ихъ*, the genitive always *follows* the noun.

(4) The possessive adjective is *also* used to avoid a *succession* of genitives.

e.g. Моги́ла Вёры находи́лась въ глубинѣ́ кладби́ща.

Vera's grave was at the bottom of the cemetery.

But подро́бности Вёриной сме́рти.

The details of Vera's death (*"de la mort de Véra"*).

(ii) There exists a partitive genitive [v. § 24 (1)] in "y" with some nouns of the second declension,

and a distinction is made which can only be learnt by practice; generally speaking, when quantity, not quality, is implied, the form in “y” is preferred to that in “a.”

e.g. Пода́йте мнѣ ча́ю.

Give me some tea (*donnez-moi du thé*).

Два фунта са́хару.

Two pounds of sugar.

У насъ есть два со́рта ча́я.

We have two sorts of tea.

(iii) The genitive (and similarly the dative) frequently replaces the English nominative, in the impersonal constructions, for which the Russian language has a predilection.

e.g. За́втра, мо́жетъ-бы́ть менѣ не бу́детъ здѣсь.

To-morrow, may-be I shall not be here;
literally, “there will not be of me here.”

Мнѣ не хо́чется спать.

I do not want to go to sleep.

Его́ нѣтъ до́ма.

He is not at home.

(iv) The genitive is replaced by the dative, in many instances, of ownership or possession.

e.g. Цѣна́ э́тимъ лошади́мъ двѣсти рублѣй.

The price of these horses is 200 roubles.

Онъ мнѣ ста́рый другъ.

He is an old friend.

Such sentences are really instances of the *dativus commodi*.

(v) The genitive is used after comparatives
[cf. § 38, V.]

e.g. Дѣдя мо́ложе своѣй племя́нницы.

The uncle is younger than his niece.

Россія въ семна́дцать разъ бо́льше Франціи.

Russia is seventeen times bigger than France.

(vi) The genitive is the objective case, as stated
in § 69, III.

(vii) The genitive is used after the adjectives and
verbs denoting *fulness, worthiness, deprivation, fear, desire,*
expectancy, and value.

e.g. Жизнь полна́ го́ря.

Life is full of sorrow.

Онъ досто́инъ наказанія.

He deserves to be punished.

Вашъ вопро́съ каса́ется вы́ше-изло́женныхъ
пу́нктовъ.

Your question touches points previously
defined.

Я прошу́ ва́шего прощѣнія.

I beg for your forgiveness.

Онъ лиши́лся жи́зни.

He deprived himself of life (committed
suicide).

Судъ лиши́лъ Петра́ Ива́новича всѣхъ правъ
состо́янія.

The court deprived Peter Ivánovič of all
rights of position (civil rights).

Всѣ люди́ жела́ютъ здоро́вья.

Everybody desires health.

Я боюсь гро́ма и мо́лнии.
I fear thunder and lightning.
Э́то сто́ит де́негъ.
This costs money.

But if the price is stated, the accusative.

e.g. Бума́га сто́итъ три ру́бля пу́дъ.
Paper costs three roubles a *pu*d.
Ни́когда́ не о́жидаль та́кого сча́стья.
I never expected such luck.

(viii) To denote *dates on which*.

e.g. Третья́го дня́ А́нна у́мерла́.
On the day before yesterday Ann died.
Шестна́дцатаго де́кабръ.
On the 16th December.

(ix) In all cases where the object of the verb is impliedly partitive, i.e. the word "some" might be added, or when in French the "partitive article" *du, des*, would be used.

e.g. При́несите ви́на. Bring some wine here.
Apportez du vin.

So, too, after *all* words of quantity.

e.g. ма́ло little, не́много́ a little, дово́льно enough, etc.

(x) As in Latin to denote *descriptions*.

e.g. Онъ чело́вѣкъ же́лѣзной насто́йчивости.
He is a man of iron persistence (will).
Пе́тръ Вели́кій былъ вы́сокаго ро́ста.
Peter the Great was a man of great height.
Онъ былъ то́гда́ ше́стиде́сяти лѣтъ.
He was then sixty years old.
(Or, ему́ было́ то́гда́ ше́стьдеся́тъ лѣтъ.)

V. *The Dative.*

As in other languages, the dative marks the personal relation or effect.

e.g. Миѣ полезно читать по-ру́ски.

It is useful to me to read Russian.

The dative is also extensively used instead of the genitive. [v. § 69, IV. (iv).]

As in Latin, French, German, and other languages, many verbs which in English take a direct object are intransitive and take the dative.

e.g. грози́ть кому́ threaten

удивля́ться чему́ be surprised

зави́довать кому́ or чему́ envy

смѣ́яться чему́ to rejoice at a thing (but

смѣ́яться надъ кѣмъ of a person)

вѣ́рить кому́ or чему́ believe (but вѣ́ровать

въ Бо́га believe in God)

Other instances of verbs requiring a dative are:—

жа́ловаться кому́ на когó to complain to A of B

моли́ться кому́ за что́ to pray to someone for something

кла́няться кому́ to greet (to bow down to)

мсти́ть кому́ за что́ to take vengeance on somebody for something

напоми́нать что́ кому́ to remind somebody of something

учи́ть когó чему́ to teach somebody something

учи́ться чему́ to learn something

But only practice can supply a full knowledge of such usages.

e.g. Чемъ вы смѣетесь?

What are you making merry of?

Я вѣрю только математическимъ доказательствамъ.

I believe only mathematical proofs.

Я смѣюсь надъ вашимъ высокомеріемъ.

I smile at your arrogance.

Отсѣль грозить мы будемъ Шведъ.

From this spot we shall threaten the Swede.

Мы удивились его скорому возвращенію.

We were astonished at his swift return.

Я завидую вашему богатству.

I envy your wealth.

Я завидую Ротшильду.

I envy Rothschild.

VI. *The Instrumental.*

This case denotes the *instrument by which* something is done, or the *agent by whom* something is done.

Thus :—(1) It is used after passive verbs.

e.g. Царь былъ помазанъ архіепіскопомъ.

The Tsar was anointed by the archbishop.

Царь былъ помазанъ мѣромъ.

The Tsar was anointed with the chrism.

(2) It also denotes the means by which a thing is done or made.

e.g. Деревья рубятъ топорами.

Trees are cleft with axes.

(3) It is used predicatively (like the dative in Latin) after verbs of becoming, or *быть* in the past tense.

e.g. *Ивѣнъ былъ моимъ слугою.*

John used to be my servant.

Онъ сдѣлался больнымъ.

He made himself ill.

Hence such irregular concords may arise as: *онъ называлъ меня дуракомъ* he called me a fool.

(4) It is used to denote the mode or manner where we in English should say "like . . ."

e.g. *Орёлъ летѣлъ стрѣлою.*

The eagle flew like an arrow.

Онъ воображаетъ себя великимъ государемъ.

He fancies himself a mighty emperor.

(5) The instrumental is also used with words of measure.

e.g. *Онъ продолжалъ идти мѣрнымъ шагомъ.*

He continued to go at a regular pace.

Море здѣсь глубиною въ десять саженъ.

The sea is here 10 sažens deep.

Температура больного повысилась двумя градусами.

The patient's temperature has gone up two degrees.

But Этотъ садъ на аршинъ шире твоего.

This garden is an aršin broader than yours.

Моё яблоко въ двадцать разъ слаще того.

My apple is twenty times sweeter than that one.

(6) The instrumental is used with words of quality.

e.g. *Этотъ тюремщикъ добръ душою.*

This gaoler is kindly in soul (has a kindly soul).

(7) The instrumental is used to denote *time in which* something happens; e.g. *зимою* in the winter, *весною* in the spring, *ночью* at night, *утромъ* in the morning.

(8) Many verbs, especially those denoting *using, governing, naming*, are followed by the instrumental. These can only be acquired by practice.

Such are:	пóльзоваться	to use
	назывáться	to be called
	владѣть	to govern
	гордѣть	to boast of
	жéртвовать	to sacrifice
	правѣть	to guide
	слыть	to be reputed as
	избирáться	to be elected

e.g. *Солдаты жéртвуютъ жизнью за отчизну.*

Soldiers sacrifice their lives for their country.

Я горжусь своими родителями.

I boast of my parents.

Его назначили (избрали) опекуномъ.

They have appointed (chosen) him as guardian.

Онъ не владѣетъ своимъ роднымъ языкомъ.

He does not understand his own language.

VII. *The Locative.*

In modern Russian this case is never used except with the prepositions *при, въ, о, на, по*. Hence it is often called the prepositional.

§ 70. TABLE OF PREPOSITIONS AND PARTICLES.

Governing one case only:—

Object., * v. § 69, III.		Genitive.		Dative.		Instr.	Loc.	Verbal Prefixes.	
Simple.	Adverbial.	Simple.	Adverbial.	Simple.	Adverbial.	Simple.	Simple.	Used with Nouns and Verbs.	With Verbs only.
про	сквозь	безъ	близъ	мимо	къ	вопреки	надъ		
черезъ		до	вдоль	около				въ	подъ
		изъ	вмѣсто	позади				до	предъ
		изъ-за	внутри	подлѣ				за	при
		изъ-подъ	виѣ	послѣ				изъ	про
		отъ	вокругъ	ради				на	съ
		у	возлѣ	сверхъ				надъ	у
			для	противъ				о	
			кромѣ	среди				отъ	
			крутомъ					по	

Those governing Objective and Instrumental :—

за						за	Prepositions never used as Verbal Prefixes.		
							безъ	черезъ	
подъ						подъ			
предъ						предъ			

Governing Objective and Locative :—

въ							въ		
на							на		
о							о		

Governing Objective, Dative, Locative :—

по						по			
----	--	--	--	--	--	----	--	--	--

Governing Objective, Genitive, Instrumental :—

съ		съ					съ		
----	--	----	--	--	--	--	----	--	--

Governing Genitive and Instrumental :—

		между					между		
--	--	-------	--	--	--	--	-------	--	--

* I.e. accusative of inanimate objects; genitive of animate, excepting the accusative sing. in -у, -ю of nouns in -и, -я.

§ 71. THE PREPOSITIONS.

Preliminary.

I. In order further to assert the relationships of nouns and verbs, as in other languages the cases are not sufficient. They have to be more accurately and extensively defined by means of prepositions.

II. Prepositions and particles are either simple or adverbial, e.g. in English “by” and “beside.”

III. Most simple prepositions are compounded with verbs; but *черезъ* through, *къ* to, *безъ* without, cannot be thus used; nor are *воз-* up, *вы-* out, *неп-* again, *не-* in excess, used except with verbs.

IV. Most prepositions govern only one case, some govern two, and some three.

V. The prepositions and the cases they govern are all stated in the Table § 70.

VI. Prepositions governing the objective take the accusative (or nominative) of inanimate things, and the genitive of living things [v. § 69, III.].

In a few instances only the older practice survives of a preposition taking the accusative with nouns denoting a living being; e.g. the idiomatic use of *въ* in *въ гóсти*, *въ нáнѣкѣ*, to be a guest, nurse, etc.

VII. Monosyllabic prepositions preceding monosyllabic nouns (including under this designation dissyllabic nouns in liquids, e.g. *гóродъ*, *бѣперъ* [v. § 5 (5)])

or dissyllabic nouns of the second declension often accent the preposition, especially in adverbial phrases.

e.g. на́ полѣ on to the floor

на́ воду on to the water

In older Russian this rule was much more general.
[v. § 80.]

§ 72. PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE ACCUSATIVE.

Three prepositions govern only the accusative:
черезъ (or чрезъ), про, сквозь.

про means "for," "concerning."

e.g. Всякъ про себя, а Господь про всехъ.

Each for himself, but the Lord for all.

Про кого говоришь?

Of whom are you speaking?

Combined with verbs it gives the idea of thoroughness.

e.g. Прочитать to read through.

сквозь right through.

e.g. Гвоздь сквозь доску прошёлъ.

The nail has gone right through (pierced) the board.

Онъ пройдётъ невредимымъ сквозь огонь и воду.
He will pass through fire and water unscathed.

Смотрѣть на что сквозь пальцы.

To look through the finger (i.e. overlook).

Онъ прошёлъ сквозь огонь и воду и мѣдныя трубы.

He passed through fire, water, and brazen tubes [proverb: i.e. every danger] [or черезъ . . .].

че́резъ through and across.

e.g. Че́резъ рѣ́ку́ across the river.

Че́резъ сте́кло ви́дно.

One can see [ви́дно it is visible] through glass.

Че́резъ него́ мно́гие постра́дили.

Through him many have suffered.

Я у него́ бу́ду че́резъ неде́лю.

I shall be with him in one week.

§ 73 (1). PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE GENITIVE ONLY.

These prepositions always govern the genitive; not merely the objective case.

безъ without.

e.g. Безъ де́негъ without money.

Безъ наде́жды without hope.

близъ* near.

e.g. Близъ го́рода near the town.

Близъ моего́ му́жа сто́яла Наста́ся.

Nastásya was standing near my husband.

вдо́ль along.

e.g. Вдо́ль у́лицы along the street.

вмѣ́сто† instead of.

e.g. Вмѣ́сто весе́лія го́ре бы́ло.

It was woe instead of joy.

вну́трі* inside.

e.g. Вну́трі чемода́на inside the portmanteau.

внѣ́* outside.

e.g. Внѣ́ Евро́пы outside Europe.

* Whence adjectives бли́жій, вну́тренный, внѣ́шній.

† Not to be confused with the adverb вмѣ́стѣ together; e.g. вмѣ́стѣ съ тобо́ю together with you.

вѣзмѣ beside.

e.g. Вѣзмѣ пѣчи beside the stove.

вѣкрѹгѣ or крѹгѡмѣ round.

e.g. Вѣкрѹгѣ цѣркѡи round the church.

дѣя for the purpose of.

e.g. Дѣя лѣчѣнѣя for the purpose of being healed.

до defines the limit "up to which."

e.g. До старѡсти дѡжилѣ.

He lived up to old age.

Чѣтай ѡтѣ начѣла до концѣ.

Read from the beginning to the end.

Ѳтѣ Лондонѣ до Парѣжа.

From London to Paris.

До полѹдня.

Until mid-day *or* before mid-day.

До Рождествѣ Христѡѡ.

B.c., i.e. up to *or* before the birth of Christ.

До Царѣ Нѣколѣя Нѣколѣѡѡѡ.

Before Tsar Nicholas Nikoláyevič.

Нхѣ бѡло до десѣтѣ.

There were up to (*or* about) ten of them.

до in compound verbs gives a sense of finishing ;

e.g. дочѣтѣть to read to the end.

изѣ from, out of.

e.g. Изѣ огнѣ out of the fire.

Изѣ дрѹжѡѡ out of friendship.

изѣ is scarcely ever used in measurements of time (*v. ѡтѣ*).

изъ-за up out of.

e.g. Сѡнце вѣшло изъ-за лѣсу.

The sun rose out of the wood.

Изъ-за неѣ "Thanks to her . . ."

изъ-подъ from under.

e.g. Изъ-подъ менѣ взяли стулъ.

They took my chair from under me.

изъ in composition with verbs retains its original meaning.

Before heavy consonants it becomes изо; e.g. изождѣть to await.

Before soft vowels it retains the ѣ; e.g. изъѣденный (молю) moth-eaten.

Before unvoiced consonants it is written and sounded ис; e.g. истрѣтить to squander.

крѡмѣ besides.

e.g. Крѡмѣ такіхъ примѣровъ.

Besides such examples.

Крѡмѣ лошадей онъ завѣлъ ещѣ автомобѣль.

Besides his horses he brought a motor.

Крѡмѣ того in addition to this.

The "gerundive" or undeclined participle, исключѣѣя, is used absolutely to mean "except, excepting"; e.g. исключѣѣя англичѣнъ никакѡи нарѡдъ свободѣнъ excepting the English no nation is free.

мѣмо past an object.

e.g. Орѣлъ летѣлъ мѣмо моего сада.

The eagle flew past my garden.

о́коло about.

e.g. О́коло двора́ round about the courtyard.

О́коло пяти́ часо́въ about five o'clock.

вокру́тъ signifies rather "encircling" all the way round.

e.g. Вокру́тъ моего́ до́ма фрукто́вый садъ.

There is an orchard all round my house.

отъ out of, from.

e.g. Отъ княже́нія Влади́мирова.

From the time of Vladímir's reign.

Я получи́лъ подáрокъ отъ ма́тери.

I received a present from my mother.

Я покрасне́лъ отъ стыда́.

I blushed for shame.

отъ, as distinguished from изъ, indicates the source whence, rather than motion whence.

e.g. Доро́га отъ Москвы́ до Петрогра́да.

The road from Moscow to Petrograd.

But Онъ при́ѣхалъ изъ Москвы́.

He arrived from Moscow.

отъ corresponds more with the Latin *ab*; изъ with *ex*.

When compounded with verbs, отъ, like изъ, retains its meaning, and changes to ото, отъ.

e.g. Ото́рва́ться to tear oneself free.

Отъѣ́хать to drive away.

Отъѣ́здъ departure.

пóдлѣ means the same as во́змлѣ.

позади́ behind.

e.g. Позади́ дере́вни behind the village.

пóслѣ after (in time or order).

e.g. Пóслѣ ухóда отъ дóлжности.

After retirement from service.

Пóслѣ королѣи вошѣлъ егó слугá.

After the king his servant entered.

прóтивъ against *or* opposite to.

e.g. Прóтивъ дворцá стоить собóръ.

Opposite to the palace stands the cathedral.

Россія бóрется прóтивъ Нѣмцевъ.

Russia is fighting against the Germans.

ради for the sake of.

e.g. Ради твоѣй мáтери.

For the sake of your mother.

сверхъ besides.

e.g. Сверхъ рáзума beyond reason.

Сверхъ жáлованья, получáетъ нагрáду.

In addition to a salary, he gets an emolument.

Сверхъ тогó furthermore.

средѣи *or* посредѣи in the middle of.

e.g. Посредѣи óстрова in the middle of the island.

Other adverbial phrases are also used with the genitive, but need not be noticed here.

у means "at," "by" (of place).

e.g. У дѣла at work.

У ногъ когó at one's feet.

у with the verb *есть* replaces the verb "to have."

e.g. У меня́ есть хлѣбъ. [v. § 87].

I have a loaf.

У себя́ ли ба́ринъ?

Is your master at home?

у with the personal pronouns, or proper names, has much the same force as the Latin *apud* or the French *chez*.

e.g. У Петро́выхъ всегда́ хоро́шій о́бѣдъ.

They dine well at the Petrovs.

In composition with verbs its use can hardly be profitably defined.

§ 73 (2). THE PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE DATIVE.

Of these there are only two.

къ can be used with some nouns to indicate approximate time.

e.g. Къ вѣ́черу toward evening.

Otherwise къ merely amplifies the ordinary meaning of the dative "to" or "for."

e.g. Къ бе́регу to the bank.

Пришлю́ кни́гу къ нему́.

I will send the book to him.

къ is never combined with verbs. When used with nouns, the consonant к is merely sounded in front, like l' and d' in French: "l'âme," "d'autres." Before dentals and gutturals къ is softened to х in pronunciation; e.g. къ тому́ is sounded хтому́; къ дому́, хдо́му.

Before heavy initial consonants **къ** is sounded, and is sometimes written, **ко**.

e.g. **Ко двору́** to the courtyard.

Similar rules apply to **въ** and **съ**, which may be written and sounded **во** and **со**.

Вопреки́ in spite of.

Вопреки́ егó старáнiямъ despite his endeavours.

§ 74. PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE INSTRUMENTAL.

надъ means “above,” “over.”

e.g. **Надъ землёю** over the earth.

Братъ верхъ надъ кѣмъ (чѣмъ) to overcome someone.

Божья воля надо мною.

God's will over me.

Бѣда́ виситъ надъ егó головой.

Sorrow hangs over his head.

между may be added to this paragraph, as it is only occasionally used with the genitive. It means “between.”

e.g. **Сидѣть между двухъ стульевъ — положёние Румыніи.**

Sitting on the fence [between two chairs]—
Roumania's situation.

Между двумя деревьями было окно.

There was a window between two trees.

It can also have a derived meaning, “among.”

§ 75. PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE LOCATIVE.

One preposition, **при**, governs the locative and no other case. **при** originally meant “at.”

e.g. **При до́мѣ** near, by the house.

При ко́мѣ in the presence of.

При свидѣ́теляхъ before witnesses.

При Никола́ѣ Алекса́ндровичѣ.

In the reign (*or* time) of Nicholas Aleksándrovič.

Онъ при заво́дѣ.

He works in the factory.

Онъ былъ адюта́нтомъ при Ско́болеѣ.

He was adjutant to Skóbolev.

Also causal—

e.g. **При бога́тствѣ** возно́симся.

In prosperity we enhance ourselves.

The meaning of **при**, when compounded with verbs, is best learnt by practice; no rule can be conveniently stated.

§ 76. **подъ**, **предъ**, and **за**.

These govern the accusative and instrumental; the former when motion is implied, the latter when a state of rest is implied (cf. *in* in Latin or German).

I. **за** primarily means “behind,” also “beyond.”

With the accusative:—

e.g. **Ѣхать за гра́ницу.**

To travel beyond the frontier, i.e. abroad.

Мнѣ да́вно за́ сорокъ лѣтъ.

I am long past forty years old.

За́ десять лѣтъ своѣй слѹжбы́ приобрѣ́лъ большѹю
о́пытность.

In ten years' service he gained great experience.

Notice also :—

Мы сади́лись за сто́лъ.

We were sitting down at the table.

Also with verbs of “holding,” “grasping.”

e.g. Егó взяли́ за́ руку.

They seized him by the hand.

Меня́ держали́ за плéчи.

They held me by the shoulders.

In combination with что, за means “what a . . . !”

e.g. Что́ за шумъ ! what a noise !

Also “for the sake of.”

e.g. Мученики́ умерли́ за́ истину́.

The martyrs died for truth.

Моли́сь за́ отца́.

Pray for your father.

And “in price.”

e.g. Прóдалъ кни́гу за́ четы́ре рубля́.

I sold a book for four roubles.

With the instrumental :—

e.g. Э́тотъ господи́нь живётъ за́ границею́.

This gentleman lives abroad.

За́ са́домъ behind the garden.

Я сидѣ́лъ за́ столóмъ.

I sat at the table.

Or “giving the reason.”

e.g. За неприѣздомъ отца мы отложили нашу поѣздку.

On account of my father's non-arrival we postponed our excursion.

Зачѣмъ? why?

Also with verbs of “fetching.”

e.g. Меня послали за сахаромъ.

They sent me to fetch the sugar.

за, in composition with verbs, expresses an incipient action [v. § 59, VI.], but sometimes a completed action, e.g. заснуть go to sleep, заплатить to pay up; in composition with nouns, expresses “at the back of,” “behind”; e.g. загородный suburban (also пригородъ suburb).

II. подъ properly means “under”; with the accusative implying motion, with the instrumental static.

e.g. Я бросилъ его подъ столъ.

I threw him under the table.

Онъ лежитъ подъ печью.

He is lying under the stove.

In regard to *time*.

e.g. Это случилось подъ вечеръ.

This happened in the evening (cf. Latin *sub vespere*).

Also in derivative senses.

e.g. Подъ этими условіями не могу подписаться.

Under these conditions I cannot give my signature.

III. предъ or передъ means “before” (of place, and of time).

The accusative and instrumental similarly refer to motion or rest.

e.g. Я явился пѣредъ судьѣй.

I appeared before the judges.

Пѣредъ ворóтами сто́ять два столба́.

In front of the gates there stand two columns.

Пѣредъ за́кономъ всѣ́ ра́вны.

All are equal before the law.

Observe the adverbs въ пѣредѣ́ in front, въ пѣредѣ́ forward, на пѣредѣ́ beforehand.

подъ and пѣредъ, when compounded with verbs, conserve their meaning.

e.g. поднима́ть	подня́ть	raise
подпира́ть	подперѣ́ть	prop up
представáть	предста́ть	stand before
представля́ть	предста́вить	to present

Like отъ, подъ and пѣредъ keep the ъ before soft vowels, and пѣредъ changes to пѣреду before heavy consonants.

e.g. Предъявѣ́ть to present.

Предусмотрѣ́ть to foresee.

Подѣ́дать to nibble, eat from below.

Предусмотрѣ́ть всѣ́ мелочи́.

To foresee all details.

Предъявѣ́ть вѣ́ксель къ взыска́нiю.

To present a bill for payment.

Онъ подѣ́халъ на конѣ́.

He came by on horseback.

§ 77. THE PREPOSITIONS *въ*, *о*, AND *на*.

These govern the accusative and locative ; the accusative as usual relating to motion, the locative to a state of rest.

I. *въ* primarily means "in." It is sounded as a part of the following word, like *къ* and *съ*, and similarly may, if the following word have heavy initial consonants, be altered to *во*.

въ with the *accusative* is primarily "into."

e.g. (1) *Ивѣнъ вошѣлъ въ комнату.*

John went into the room.

Я ѣзди́лъ въ Оренбур́гъ.

I travelled to Orenbúrg.

(2) It is used in statements of time.

e.g. *Во вре́мя путеше́ствія я скуча́лъ.*

I was bored during the journey.

Въ пять лѣтъ оконча́ю мой трудъ.

In five years I shall finish my work.

Въ понеде́льникъ онъ Monday.

(Distinguish *по понеде́льникамъ* every Monday.)

Въ де́вять часо́въ at nine o'clock.

Три́жды въ день three times a day.

(Distinguish *въ де́вятомъ часу́* in the ninth hour ;
i.e. between eight and nine.)

(3) And in statements of price, measure, etc.

e.g. *Доро́га въ восемна́дцать ве́рстъ.*

A road eighteen versts long.

(4) One idiomatic use with the accusative plural should be remarked, viz.:—

Меня звали въ гости.

They invited me as a guest.

Онъ пошёлъ въ офицеры.

He has become an officer.

Постригусь въ монахи.

I shall take the tonsure as a monk.

In this idiomatic use the accusative, and not the genitive, is used as the objective case [v. § 71, VI.].

(5) Similarly:—

Сынъ въ отца.

The son is like his father.

въ with the *locative* means (1) “in.”

e.g. Баринъ въ столовой.

Master is in the dining-room.

(2) “in,” in measurements of time.

e.g. Въ сентябрѣ мѣсяцѣ in September.

Въ тысяча девятьсотъ пятнадцатомъ году in 1915.*

(3) “in,” in measurements of distance.

e.g. Моя дача отсюда въ трёхъ верстахъ.

My estate is three versts away.

(4) After certain verbs.

e.g. Каяться въ грѣхахъ to repent one's sins.

Признаваться въ ошибкѣ to confess a mistake.

Обвинять кого въ убійствѣ to convict of murder.

* In these phrases *родъ* cannot be omitted, and no other locative form is admissible.

In composition **въ** conserves its meaning.

e.g. **Входи́тъ** to enter.

The original form **во** is kept in some accented adverbs; e.g. **во́всѣ** altogether. [v. § 80.]

With verbs commencing with a soft vowel **въ** is still hard and written **въ**.

e.g. **Въѣ́хатъ** (*vyékhət'*) to drive in.

II. The preposition **на** primarily means "on."

With the accusative.

e.g. (1) **Я ходи́лъ на пло́щадь.**

I went on to the square.

Палъ тумáнь на сыру́ю зéмлю.

A mist fell on the damp earth.

Я положи́лся на тебѣ́.

I relied on you.

(2) In reference to time.

На четвёртый день on the fourth day.

Отпущу́ тебѣ́ на три часа́.

I will let you go for three hours (**до трѣхъ часа́** until 3 o'clock).

(3) In reference to the effect produced.

Ку́шайте на здоро́вье.

Eat for your health, i.e. may it do you good.

Я слѣ́довалъ ему́ на злó.*

I followed him to do him hurt.

* **Отъ на́ зло.**

- (4) "Against," "in respect of."

Я серди́лся на Григо́рия.

I got angry with Gregory.

Не жа́луйся на твоего́ бра́та.

Do not make complaints with respect to
(against) your brother.

With the locative.

- e.g. (1) Ва́ша кни́га на столѣ́.

Your book is on the table.

- (2) In words denoting time.

На Рожде́ствѣ́.

On Christmas day.

- (3) In words indicating the points of the compass.

На сѣ́верѣ́ in the North.

- (a) Мой братъ жени́лся на францу́женкѣ́
племя́нница кото́рой вы́йдётъ за́мужъ за
ру́скаго по́дданнаго.

My brother has married a Frenchwoman
whose niece is going to marry a Russian
subject.

- (β) Игра́ли въ ка́рты.

They were playing cards.

Игра́ли въ ша́хматы.

They were playing chess (i.e. a *game*).

But Игра́ли на скри́пкѣ́.

They were playing the violin (the musical
instrument).

(γ) *Observe* на Русѣ́ or въ Россі́и in Russia.

(Русѣ́ is a poetical form.)

In composition на has no meaning limited enough to be stated in these pages.

III. The preposition о (объ before vowels, обо before very heavy initial consonants) primarily means "on" or "against."

With the accusative.

(1) Онъ уда́рися о ка́мень he hit against a stone

(2) Объ́ эту́ по́ру at this time.

With the locative.

(1) Concerning, about.

e.g. Мы́ гово́рили о́ твоёмъ́ несча́стїи.

We were speaking of your misfortune.

(2) Of time (when the time is not exactly stated).

e.g. О́ Па́схѣ́ at Easter.

(3) With numerals, when the objects enumerated are constituents of something else, and not accidental.

e.g. Сту́лъ о́ трѣ́хъ но́жкахъ́ a chair with three feet.

(But Стѣ́на въ́ три́ арші́на a wall 3 aršins high.)

In composition о indicates the completion of the act, and some generality.

e.g. Обо́йти́ to go round (and survey).

Огла́вѣ́ться to glance round.

Before heavy consonants it can take the full form обо́; e.g. обо́драть, обди́рать to flay.

Before verbs beginning in soft vowels it is written and sounded *объ*.

e.g. *Объяснить* to explain.

Объятие, объёмъ, an embrace—the capacity, contents.

Before verbs beginning with *и, ѣ + и* are fused into *ы*; e.g. *обыграть* to beat at play, cf. *сыграть* from *съ + играть* to play (a piece of music or at cards).

As a preposition *объ* is the correct form before words beginning with a vowel, and occasionally *обо* before words with heavy initial consonants.

§ 78. THE PREPOSITIONS *по* AND *съ*.

I. *по*, with the accusative, states the limit in space or time, or the purpose of the action.

e.g. *По край свѣта* to the edge of the world.

Обнажи́ ру́ку по́-локоть.

Bare your arm up to the elbow.

Мы пробуде́мъ здѣсь по Пáсху.

We shall stay here till Easter.

По сіе вре́мя я ничегó не слыха́лъ.

Up to now I have heard nothing.

По вѣ́къ свой (или по сме́рть) не забúду.

I will not forget (for all my life) up to my death.

Я шёлъ въ лѣсъ по мали́ну.

I went into the wood (to gather) raspberries.

Пошли́ по́ воду.

Send for water.

Distributively, *по два, по три, по четыре* [v. § 62, I. and IV. (2)].

Notice—по ту сторону, по правую (руку), по лѣвую, that side, to the right, to the left.

по with the dative indicates extensive space, in which something happens.

e.g. (1) По горáмъ over the hills.

По гóроду through the town.

Плыть по́ морю to sail the seas.

Эта трава́ растётъ по овра́гамъ.

This herb grows in the ravines.

(2) Distributively—

По утра́мъ every morning.

По пяти́ in fives (and with every number, except два, три, четы́ре). [v. § 62, IV. (2).]

По ноча́мъ every night.

По среда́мъ every Wednesday.

(3) “According to.”

По-мо́ему* in my opinion.

По ста́рому in the old-fashioned way.

По чи́ну according to rank.

Почему́? why?

Потому́ что because.

по with the locative.

(1) With words of time, means “after.”

e.g. Потóмъ thereupon.†

По рождествѣ́ after Christmas.

По Петрѣ́ Вели́комъ after Peter the Great.

* In this single phrase моемý is accented мо́ему. So, too, по тво́ему, своемý. Thus:—

По моемý процессу вы́шло по-мо́ему.

My law-suit came off to my liking.

† Whence потóмки, потóмство descendants,

(2) "On account of."

e.g. Женá по мýжѣ назывáется.

A woman bears her husband's name.

По кóмъ вы въ тра́урѣ?

For whom are you in mourning?

по in composition confers a diminutive sense to the verb [v. § 59, VI.], e.g. поглядыва́ть to glance here and there; or indicates the completion of the actions, e.g. поби́ть to smite down, посла́ть to send at last.

II. (1) съ with the accusative is used in general measurements of space and time.

e.g. Рублѣй съ пято́къ издержáлъ.

I spent about five roubles.

Тамъ я про́жилъ съ мѣсяцъ.

I stayed there about a month.

Онъ рóстомъ съ отцá.

He is about as tall as his father.

Вѣрсть со́ сто (съ со́тню) бѹдетъ.

It will be about 100 versts away.

(2) съ with the genitive has the primal meaning "down from."

e.g. Онъ сошѣлъ съ плáтформы.

He left the platform.

(изъ implies rather "away from," in space: e.g. поѣздъ дв́инулся изъ Москв́ы the train moved out of Moscow.)

Она́ сошла́ съ ума́.

She has gone mad (literally, out of her mind).

Съ тѣхъ поръ from that time.

Жду со́ дня на́ день.

I waited from day to day

It may also have a causal meaning, like *отъ*.

e.g. *Съ тоскѣ* from melancholy.

съ with the instrumental has an entirely different meaning, i.e. "with," "accompanying."

e.g. *Я придѣ съ супругою (супругой)*.

I will arrive with my wife.

Онъ дѣлалъ это съ радостью.

He was doing this with pleasure.

Онъ человѣкъ съ умомъ.

He is a man with sense.

Совсѣмъ quite.

Кто говорилъ съ Кузьмой?

Who was speaking to Kuz'ma?

In composition *съ* can have either the meaning "from" or "with," e.g. *снимать* to take away, *съѣздить* to travel away; or *соединять* to unite, *сочинить* to compose, *сдѣлать* to finish doing.

Before soft vowels *съ* is retained entire, e.g. *съѣдать* to devour; or, before *и*, amalgamates, e.g. *сыскать* to search (*съ-искать*); or remains as *со*, e.g. *соединять*.

§ 79. THE VERBAL PREFIXES *воз*, *вы*, *пере*, *пре*, *разъ*.

воз adds the sense of "up" to a verb.

Before unvoiced consonants it is written and sounded *вос*, e.g. *воспитать* to educate.

Before verbs beginning with *с* + a consonant it is, however, written *воз* and sounded *вос*, e.g. *возстаніе* insurrection.

In Old Slavonic the form was възъ, hence in modern Russian въз and возо are also met with.

e.g. взлетѣть to fly up
взду́ть цѣны to inflate prices

Or before heavy consonants—

e.g. вздира́ть, but взодра́ть to tear up
взира́ть (for взи́рать), but возо́зрѣть to look up
(Cf. сжечь,* but сожгý to burn utterly.)

Before verbs beginning with soft vowels the з is pronounced and written hard.

e.g. възѣзжа́ть to drive up

As with other similar prepositions, ѣ + и after is fused into ы.

e.g. возъ + имѣть becomes возо́имѣть to conceive
(doubts, fears, etc.)

Similarly раз-, разъ-, разы-, разо-, рас-

вы probably means “out,” and signifies the completion of an act.

e.g. вы́болѣть to become utterly ill
вы́бѣжать (perfective) выбо́гать (imperfective)
to run out [v. § 59, IV.]
вы́гнать drive out, выговя́ть (imperfective)

вы always takes the tonic accent except as stated in § 59, I. (3), II., and IV., when the imperfective is the

* Sounded žžeč.

iterative of the simple verb, in which the imperfective retains the original accent.

e.g. **вы́просить** to question, **выпра́шивать**
вы́гадать to guess, **выга́дывать**

пере implies repetition, or change.

e.g. **переду́мать** to reconsider
переби́ть to kill many, to massacre
перебыва́ть to be in many places
передопроси́ть to re-examine
перела́мывать to break to pieces
переписа́ть to copy
пересма́тривать to review, survey ; **пересмо́треть**
 revision

пре implies excellence, and is nearly the same as **предь** ; with adjectives it forms a superlative.

e.g. **прелюбе́зный** very kindly
превыша́ть to surpass
презира́ть to despise

But it is often merely a bye-form of **пере**.

e.g. **превраща́ть, преврати́ть** to transform

разъ has a motion of scattering or dissipation.

e.g. **растека́ть** to flow (in various directions)
разстана́вливать to station people apart
разы́гривать to play out to the end
разъѣ́здъ a departure (of many people in
 different directions)
разува́ть to take off one's shoes
разсе́ивать to sow (scatter seed)
разсма́тривать to survey all round

§ 80. THE ACCENTUATION OF PREPOSITIONS AND PARTICLES.

The general rule is that, as in other languages, prepositions are proclitics, i.e. atonic words pronounced with their noun, which is accented; e.g. “in-the-house,” “on-the-table,” “въ домѹ,” “на столѣ.” But in older Russian, and to a slight extent in modern Russian, certain of the simple prepositions—not the adverbial prepositions—when used with monosyllabic or dissyllabic nouns, are accented, the noun becoming the *enclitic*.

e.g. на́ бокъ on the side

Further, when particles are used in compound verbs, in some cases the particle takes the accent, the verb becoming enclitic. This *only* applies—

- (1) to the prefix вы [v. § 79 and § 59, IV.];
- (2) to monosyllabic verbs [v. § 49 and § 52,
- (1) and (2)]

and generally only to the past participle passive.

e.g. прожѣть	про́житый	to live through
начѣть	начѣль*	to begin
избѣть	избѣранъ	to select
нанѣть	нанѣль and	
	нанѣтъ	to hire†
назѣть	назѣванъ	called
подѣть	подѣданный	a subject (of a State)

This list contains some of the most important phrases in which the old accentuation of the preposition

* But past part. pass. начѣтый.

† So, too, *all* dissyllabic compounds of -лъ.

survives. It will be observed the words are nearly all monosyllables, or dissyllables with liquids, such as бѣрегъ shore [v. § 5 (5)], or dissyllabic feminines, and that the usage is practically confined to the accusative.

Verbs that accent the preposition are also monosyllabic.

The forms accenting the particle are mostly used in set phrases, like adverbs.

- e.g. на́ бокъ (or на бѣ́къ) to one side
 на́ берегъ (or на бѣ́регъ) to the shore
 на́ голо (of weapons) naked
 на́ голову (or на го́лову) on to the head
 на́ ду́шу (or на ду́шу) into the mind
 на́ землю (or на зѣ́млю) on to the earth
 на́ зло (or на злѣ́) in despite
 на́ полъ on to the floor
 на́ поле (or на по́ле) on to the field
 на́ ночь for a night
 на́смѣхъ (to hold up) to ridicule
 на́чисто (to wipe) clean

So, too, in verbs.

- e.g. на́нялъ I hired
 за́нялъ (за́нять) busied
 пре́данный devoted
 про́данный betrayed
 из́бранъ selected
 на́званный called

Similarly with the *negative* не: не́ далъ,
 не́ бра́лъ, не́ было, не́ пилъ.
 пе́релилъ (or пере́лилъ) overflowed
 о́тдалъ (óddəl) he has given away
 про́жилъ he has lived through

Other instances are :—

по́ лу́гу (по лу́гу) over the meadow
 по́ морю (по мо́рю) over the sea
 по́ берегу (по бе́регу) along the bank
 во́все at all
 изъ лѣсу out of the wood
 о́ землю (о зе́млю) against the ground
 за́ ногу by the leg
 у́ моря (у мо́ря) by the sea

No very general rule can be stated. In modern Russian the preposition is sometimes accented before simple monosyllabic or dissyllabic nouns, mostly when used with the accusative.

§ 81. THE NUMERALS.

Under this head it is proposed to enumerate some idiomatic uses of the numerals.

I. *The date (число́), days (дни), etc.*

The days of the week (недѣ́ля) are :—

Пове́дѣльникъ	Monday (Недѣ́ля, Church Slavonic for Sunday)
Вто́рникъ	Tuesday
Среда́	Wednesday (i.e. the middle)
Четве́ргъ	Thursday (i.e. the fourth day)*
Пя́тница	Friday (i.e. the fifth day)
Суббо́та	Saturday (i.e. the Sabbath)
Воскресе́нье	Sunday (literally "Resurrection")
Недѣ́ля	the week

* In ecclesiastical parlance, четве́ргокъ.

The months (мѣсяцъ) are :—

Январь	January	(января́, etc., accenting termination)
Февраль	February	(февраля́, etc.)
Мартъ	March	(ма́рта, etc.)
Апрѣль	April	(апрѣ́ля, etc.)
Май	May	(ма́я, etc.)
Іюнь	June	(ію́ня, etc.)
Іюль	July	(ію́ля, etc.)
Августъ	August	(августа́, etc.)
Сентябрь	September	(сентяб́ря, etc.)
Октябрь	October	(октяб́ря, etc.)
Ноябрь	November	(нояб́ря, etc.)
Декабрь	December	(декаб́ря, etc.)

The calendar of the Greek Church is still used in Russia, and is now thirteen days behind the Julian or Western calendar.

Instances are given of the use of these words, illustrating the rules.

e.g. Котóрое (какóе) числó у насъ сего́дня?

What is the date to-day?

Шесты́надцатое января́.

The 16th of January.

Пя́тница двáдцать пята́го (пята́е) ма́рта.

Friday the 25th of March.

Do not use capitals in designating the days and months.

When the year is mentioned, the year and number all go into the genitive, unless the day is named.

e.g. Средá (въ средý) трѣдцать пѣрвое мáрта тýсяча
восемь-сóтъ сóрокъ восьмóго гóда.

Wednesday the 31st March 1848.

But Девятнáдцатаго февралí тýсяча восемьсóтъ
шестдесáтъ пѣрваго гóда.

The 19th of February 1861.

These would be commonly abbreviated :—

e.g. Средá (въ средý) 31-ое мáрта 1848 г.
19-го февралí 1861 г.

Generally both dates are indicated.

e.g. 25/12 iii. 15.

II. *Age.* The following instances illustrate the rules :—

Скóлько Ивáшку (Ивáну) лѣтъ?

How old is Iváško?

Какóй вóзраст Áнны Петрóвны?

How old is Ánna Petróvna?

Ей шестьдесáтъ лѣтъ.

She is sixty years old.

Онá родилáсь восьмóго мáя тýсяча восемьсóтъ
сóрокъ вторóго гóда.

She was born on the 8th May 1842

Емý идѣтъ двáдцать пѣрвый годъ

He is in his twenty-first year.

Мнѣ трѣдцать лѣтъ óтроду.

I am thirty years old.

Емý бóлѣе двáдцати-восьмí лѣтъ

He is over twenty-eight.

Емý ужé зá сорокъ лѣтъ.

He is over forty.

III. In forming compound nouns and adjectives in which the first element is a numeral, the rule is to use the genitive of the numeral, e.g. двухъ-этажный two-storeyed; двугривенникъ* twenty copecks; трёх-головый змѣй a three-headed dragon; четырёхсотый the 400th; двадцатилѣтній twenty years old; пятиугольникъ pentagon, etc.; except тысячелѣtie millennium, and compounds with сто, such as столѣtie century.

IV. *The time of day.*

The Russian for hour is часъ; for a watch or clock часы (plural).

The following sentences give the rules:—

Котóрый тепѣрь часъ на ва́шихъ часа́хъ?

What time is it by your watch?

Ско́лько тепѣрь вре́мени? What is the time now?

Ско́лько про́било? What time was it that struck?

Тепѣрь два часа́. It is now two o'clock.

Сейча́сь шесть часо́въ. It is now six o'clock.

Сейча́сь не бо́льше семѣ́и часо́въ.

It is not more than seven o'clock.

Сейча́сь одна́ мину́та пята́го.

It is one minute past four.

Сейча́сь че́тверть пята́го. It is a quarter past four.

Сейча́сь поло́вина пята́го. It is half past four.

Сейча́сь три́дцать де́вять тре́тьяго.

It is 39 minutes past two.

Сейча́сь три че́тверти тре́тьяго.

It is a quarter to three.

* дву Old Russian for двухъ.

Сейчасъ безъ четверти девять.

It is a quarter to nine.

Сейчасъ половина одиннадцатаго.

It is half past ten.

Сейчасъ безъ десяти (минутъ) двѣнадцать.

It is ten minutes to twelve.

Онъ уѣхалъ въ сорокъ девяти послѣ четырехъ.

He went away at 4.49.

V. *Fractions.*

There is little to add under this head, but the student must specially note the compounds with полъ, полу, a half. полъ as a regular noun signifies sex or half.*

e.g. мужской полъ the male sex

пополáмъ by halves

(1) When the compound signifies half of a whole, he nominative has пол- with the substantive in the genitive; the other cases are declined regularly with the prefix полу-.

e.g. полчасá half an hour, полу́часá, полу́часу, etc.

полверсты́ half a verst, полуверсты́, полуверстѣ́

Thus, too, по́лдень mid-day, по́лночь midnight; полу́дня, полу́ночи, etc.

After the preposition по, the locative of по́лдень is полу́дни (a relic of the time when день was a feminine like кость); e.g. нѣско́лько мину́тъ по полу́дни a few minutes after noon.

Thus, too, полтора́ [v. § 62, IV. (8)].

* Distinguish полъ floor, and пола́ skirt.

It is most important to distinguish полднѣ, полно́чи, half a day, half a night, which signify duration, not a point of time.

In these words *only* the first element is declined, the second already being in the genitive.

e.g. Я бо́дрствовалъ полднѣ, полно́чи, полчасá, etc.

I sat up half a day, half a night, half an hour, etc.

In older Russian, as in German, there were other compounds with полу-, for $2\frac{1}{2}$, $3\frac{1}{2}$, etc., viz. полтретьяго, $2\frac{1}{2}$, etc.

These are obsolete. Modern Russian, like English, says два съ полови́ной, etc. [v. § 62, IV. (8).]

e.g. Послѣ полуминуты́ этой рабóты она́ устáла.

After half a minute of this work she was tired.

In this connection the word сýтки, сýтокъ, may be noticed, meaning the whole day, i.e. 24 hours, including день day and ночь night.

(2) Where “half” is used loosely, and not in terms of strict measurement.

These are compounds prefixed with полу- invariable.

e.g. полуóстровъ	a peninsula
полумѣсяцъ	a crescent moon
полутóмъ	a half-volume
(but полгóма, полутóма	half of a volume)
полу-офиціальный	semi-official, etc.

VI. *Russian money.*

The unit is the рубль (рубля) or цѣловый, worth about two shillings. [v. § 4 (9).]

The divisions are as follows:—

90	соpекъ	девяносто копѣекъ	отъ	дѣвять	гривенъ
80	„	воcемьдeсять	„ „	воcемь	„
70	„	сѣмьдeсять	„ „	сeмь	„
60	„	шeстьдeсять	„ „	шeсть	„
50	„	пятьдeсять	„ „	полтина	отъ полтинникъ
40	„	сорокъ	„ „	четыре	гривенника
30	„	тридцать	„ „	три	„
25	„	двадцать пять	„ „	четвертакъ	
20	„	двадцать	„ „	двугривенный	
15	„	пятнадцать	„ „	пяти-алтынный	
10	„	дѣсять	„ „	гривенникъ	
5	„	пять	„ „	пятачѣкъ	
3	„	три копѣйки	„ „	алтынъ*	
2	„	двѣ „	„ „	грошъ	
1	„	копѣйка			
$\frac{1}{2}$	„	полкопѣйка	„ „	дѣнежка	
$\frac{1}{4}$	„	четверть копѣйки	„ „	полушка	

VII. *Frequencies.*

Besides однажды, etc., there are some other locutions that should be noticed.

(1) In the multiplication table единократно is used instead of однажды, and четырежды is retained for this purpose. From five onwards the instrumental of the numeral is used, but is accented пятаю, шестю, восьмю, девятю, одиннадцатю, etc., and *not* on the ultimate, as usual.

* Obsolete.

(2) Before comparatives the forms used are вдвое, втрое, вчетверо, впятеро . . . въ десятеро ; and thenceforward въ одиннадцать разъ, etc.

e.g. Москва по пространству въ двадцать семь разъ больше Сѣрпухова.

Moscow in extent is twenty-one times bigger than Sѣrpukhov.

VIII. A note should be added that one cardinal has become obsolete, namely тѣма or тма 10,000 (except in some phrases, and as an expression for a multitude). There is a derivative, тѣмникъ a commander of 10,000, and тматмѹщій, "multitudinous."

IX. Cards.

The names of the suits and the cards (карты, feminine) may be useful to the student.

The four suits (масть, feminine, third declension) are : hearts червы (червѣй, feminine, third declension) ; diamonds бубны (бубонъ, feminine) ; spades пики (пикъ, feminine), and трѣфы (трефъ, feminine) clubs. Trumps are козырь (mas.) ; a game without trumps игра въ безкозыряхъ. A trick is взятка, взяточка ; игрокъ the player.

The cards in each suit are :—

тузъ ace	шестёрка six	валётъ knave
двойка deuce	семёрка seven	дама queen
тройка three	осьмёрка eight	король king
четвёрка four	девятка nine	
пятёрка five	десятка ten	

e.g. король червѣй ; пятёрка бубонъ ; тройка пикъ ; девятка трѣфъ.

Notice the phrases : играть, сыграть (perfective) въ карты ; проиграть to lose ; выиграть to win (imperfectives проигрывать, выигрывать).

§ 82. THE PRONOUNS.

I. *The Interrogative Pronouns.*

These are used as in English, *кто* referring to persons, like “who”; *что* to inanimate objects and neuters like “what,” and *ко́тoрый* corresponding to “which.”

Note, however, that in English the genitive precedes the noun by which it is governed; in Russian it follows. [v. § 69, IV. (3).]

e.g. John's house. Домъ Ива́на.

Thus: Въ домъ ко́тoраго мужика́ ты вошёлъ?

Into which peasant's house did you go?

II. *The Relative Pronouns.*

As in English, the interrogative and relative are now identical in form.

кто is used when the subject is a person, or in correlative and indefinite sentences, answering to *тотъ*, *всякій*, *всѣ*.

e.g. Тому́, кто лжётъ, не вѣ́рятъ.

A liar is not believed.

Всѣ́, кто при́были, изуми́лись.

All who arrived were astounded.

что is similarly used, when the generality is not personal.

e.g. Всѣ́ что ты сказа́лъ—дура́чество.

All you have said is folly.

Otherwise, for nouns *ко́рый* is used; and, as always in Russian, the genitive follows and never precedes.

e.g. Опáсности, ко́рымъ я подвергáлся.

The dangers I have risked.

Домъ, крýша ко́раго снесена́ вѣтромъ.

The house the roof of which has been carried off by the wind.

како́й may be substituted, where the sense allows; it means "such as."

Observe.—The relative is *never* omitted as in English. But in common parlance *что* in the nominative tends to replace *кто* and *ко́рый* for all numbers and genders. This is not an admitted literary use.

e.g. Э́то тотъ са́мый ни́щій, что приходи́лъ къ вамъ у́тромъ.

This is the same beggar as visited you in the morning.

III. *The Indefinite Pronouns.*

These are of two kinds; first, *кто* and *что*, etc., unaccented (cf. in Greek *τις, τι*, contrasted with *τις, τί*), and next, compounded pronouns with *то*, *ни*, and other particles. [v. § 85 on negative sentences.]

e.g. Всѣ что ни есть.*

Anything whatsoever.

Ско́лько ни рабо́тали.

However much they worked.

* *ни* as compared with *не* is like the Latin *nē*, Greek *μή*, e.g. *πάν ὃ, τι ἂν ᾖ* or *μὴ ᾖ* whatever it may [not] be.

Кѣмъ бы ты ни родился, ты всётаки обязанъ повиноваться закону.

Whatever you were born, you must obey the law.

Кто-нибудь.

Whoever it may be.

Кто-нибудь пусть принесётъ мнѣ стаканъ воды.

Let somebody bring me a glass of water.

(будь imperative of быть; v. § 57, II. and 41, VI.)

The distinction between *какой-то*... and *какой ни* is almost identical with the English "some" and "any": someone (but I don't know who exactly); anyone (and there is no discrimination nor knowledge of any individual).

IV. *The Reciprocal Pronouns.*

To express "each other," "one another," there are two phrases: *другъ друга*, *одинъ другой*. *другъ друга* is used for *all* genders and numbers. The latter part of the phrase is varied, to be in agreement with the verb or sentence.

e.g. Онѣ неавидѣли другъ друга.

They hated each other.

Онѣ спорили другъ съ другомъ.

They quarrelled with each other.

другъ дружку (from *дружка*, feminine) is popularly also in use.

But with regard to *things*, the usual phrase is *одинъ другой*, both of which are declined in full.

e.g. *Волны сходились и разбѣгались борясь одна съ другою.*

The waves met and parted, fighting one another.

V. *The Negative Pronouns* [v. § 85 and § 41, VII.].

In Russian, negatives are doubled, but do not cancel each other.* There is no means of expressing in Russian "I did *not* see nobody."

e.g. *Никакой нѣ было причины къ его уходу.*

There was no reason.

All negative pronouns are resolved when governed by a preposition. [v. § 41, VII.]

e.g. *Ни къ какому изъ вышеуказанныхъ примѣровъ это не подходитъ.*

This does not comply with any of the previous examples.

The only apparent exception is when the second negative negates a different verb or a noun or adjective.

e.g. *Я не считаю его неучтивымъ.*

I do not consider him impolite.

Никто не можетъ не узнать его милосердія.

No one can not-recognise (fail to recognise) his clemency.

* E.g. in Greek *οὐδείς οὐκ ἄσκηται* no one has come, but *οὐκ ἔπαθεν οὐδέν* could mean, as in English, "he did not experience nothing, but..."

§ 83. THE RUSSIAN APPELLATIVES.

Under this head a few notes will be found, as to the Russian methods of speaking to others, writing to others, and addressing letters.

I. *Conversation.*

Intimate friends and relatives use the pronoun ты; the politer form is вы. The Russian for "tutoyer," "dutzen," is тыкать.

вы takes a predicative adjective in the plural.

e.g. вы очень любезны you are very kind (*unlike* the French "vous êtes très aimable")

But a noun following is in the singular, as in French, e.g. вы мой лучший друг you are my best friend.

Servants when speaking *of* their masters use the 3rd person plural.

e.g. Дома-ли ба́ринъ (и́ли ба́рышня)?

Is your master (mistress) at home?

Онѣ ушли́.

He (she) has gone out.

Russians in addressing one another use not the family name, but the Christian name and patronymic.

Russians have three names: the Christian name, the patronymic, i.e. the father's name, and the family name.

e.g. Ле́въ Никола́евичъ Толсто́й.

The "patronymic" ends in -овичъ (-евичъ) or -овъ (-евъ) (for the lower classes) in the masculine,* and -овна (-евна) and -ова (-ева) in the feminine.

The Christian name is called *имя*, the patronymic *отчество*, the family name *фамілія*.

e.g. Какъ зовѹтъ васъ по имени, отчеству, фаміліи ?
 Какъ ваше имя, (ваше) отчество, (ваша)
 фамілія ?

In ordinary narration and conversation all classes are designated by the name and patronymic.

e.g. При Николаѣ Алексáндровичѣ.
 In the reign of Nicholas II.

Вчера я встрѣтилъ Мáрью Алексѣвну.

Equivalent to "yesterday I met Mary," or
 "yesterday I met Mrs. or Miss . . ."

The Russian equivalents for Mr., Mrs., Monsieur, Madame, are *господи́нъ* (plural *господá*), and *госпожа́*. The use of them is very much more restricted than in other European languages.

Господи́нъ, *госпожа́*, are only employed when the relationship is distant. Thus, the master of a factory would address his equal (whose name we will suppose to be *Васи́лій Па́вловичъ Перепо́лкинъ*) as *Васи́лій*

* The patronymic is accented like the name from which it is derived; where monosyllabic names throw the accent on to terminations, or the termination can be accented, the accent is similarly thrown forward in the derivative. E.g. *Гома́*, *Гоми́чъ*; *Кузьма́*, *Кузьми́чъ*; *Са́вва*, *Са́ввичъ*; *Пе́тръ* (*Петра́*), *Петро́вичъ*; *Алекса́ндръ* (*Алекса́ндра*), *Алекса́ндровичъ*. A few feminines are formed in -ична, e.g. *Гоми́ниш(ч)на*, *Са́ввиш(ч)на*, *Кузьми́ниш(ч)на*; *Лука́*, *Луки́ниш(ч)на*; *Никѣ́та*, *Никѣ́тиш(ч)на*.

Пáвловичъ; an underling (such as a clerk) as Господи́нъ Перепёлкинъ; a mere workman or lower servant as Васи́лий. He would not address him as Перепёлкинъ, unless he were a superior giving a direct command to an inferior; e.g. the master speaking to a foreman.

Again, if a doctor is introduced, he will commonly be addressed as до́кторъ (as we say "colonel" or "lieutenant" or "doctor"), unless he is of higher standing, when the polite form would be господа́нъ до́кторъ.

When comparative strangers address one another, they will say господа́нъ Ба́шкинъ; as they approach intimacy, they will use the form Илья́ Кузьми́чъ; and as close friends, Илья́; but seldom Ба́шкинъ, as in other languages, the surname.

II. *Between masters and servants.*

The servant speaks of his master and mistress, and their daughter, respectively as ба́ринъ, ба́рыня, ба́рышня.

In shops, restaurants, etc., an attendant calls the customers or masters су́дарь, су́дарыня (an abbreviation of госуда́рь, госуда́рыня), or adds an enclitic съ; these phrases are equivalent to the English "sir" and "madam."

e.g. Слу́шаю-съ. I hear you, sir.

Да-съ. Yes, sir.

Что прика́жете-съ? What are your orders, sir?

This съ is supposed to be an abbreviation of су́дарь.

The master and mistress (*patron* and *patronne*) of a business house are хозя́инъ, хозя́ева.

III. At meetings the company is collectively addressed as **Мѣлостивыя госудáрыни и мѣлостивые*** госудáри, or more simply as **господá**, equivalent to "Ladies and Gentlemen."

IV. *Titles.*

Majesty is **Велѣчество**. The monarch is called **госудáрь** (**госудáрыня**), and these words are written with a capital, unless the reference is historical to a deceased monarch.

e.g. **Егó Имперáторское Велѣчество Госудáрь.**

Ея Имперáтрица Велѣчество Госудáрыня.

Царь, **царѣца**, are used in ordinary speech.

The Royal family has the title **Высóчество**.

e.g. **Егó Имперáторское Высóчество Наслѣ́дникъ.**

Цесарéвичъ Алексѣ́й Никола́евичъ.

His Imperial Highness the heir Tsesarévič Alexis.

Otherwise the forms are **царéвичъ**, **царéвна**.

Grand Dukes (who belong to the Royal Family more distantly) are styled **Велѣ́кій Князь**.

e.g. **Егó Имперáторское Высóчество Велѣ́кій Князь Никола́й Никола́евичъ.**

Ея Имперáторское Высóчество Велѣ́кая Княги́ня Елиза́вета Никола́евна.

The daughters of a **князь** are styled **княжна́**.

* A rendering of the German "gnädige Herrschaften."

Dukes (князь) have the title сіятельство (brilliance).

e.g. Его Сіятельство Князь Пáвель Петро́вичъ Долго-
ру́кій.

Earls and barons are also styled сіятельство.

e.g. Его Сіятельство Графъ (графі́ня) . . .

The civil ranks are as follows:—

Его́ Высокoпревосході́тельство (excellency), for a
Дѣ́йствительный Тайный Совѣ́тникъ (something
like a Privy Councillor; also called Стáтскій
Генерáль).

Его́ Превосході́тельство, for a Тайный Совѣ́тникъ.

Его́ Высokорóдіе, for a Статскій Совѣ́тникъ.

Его́ Высokоблагорóдіе, for a Коллѣ́жскій Секретáрь,
and for the lower ranks.

Его́ Благорóдіе.

In the army, ranks from a порúчикъ (lieutenant) to
a штабъ-капитáнъ (captain) are styled Его́ Благорóдіе;
from a капитáнъ to полкóвникъ, Его́ Высokо-благорóдіе;
from a general of infantry to a general-lieutenant,
Его́ Превосході́тельство.

In the Church, the regular clergy are styled Высokо-
преподóбіе, преподóбіе, высokопреосвященство, преосвя-
щенство, according to rank; the lower orders being
called благословéніе.

Persons not titled are addressed господі́нъ, госпожá,
followed by the full name; often the господі́нъ,
госпожá, is omitted on envelopes.

As stated in § 67, Russian concord follows sense and not form, unlike French and German.

e.g. Его Превосходительство изво́лили приб́ить.

His Excellency has arrived (deigned to arrive)

Ея́ Импера́торское Вели́чество Госуда́рыня говори́ла что . . .

Her Imperial Majesty the Empress said . . .

Contrast—“*Sa Majesté le roi est arrivée.*” “*Que désire-t-elle?*” In Russian, что хо́тите.

These titles must be used in combination with the name of the office.

e.g. Его́ Высокопревосходи́тельству Госпо́дну
Мини́стру На́роднаго Просвѣще́нiя (Путѣй
сообщѣ́нiй).

To his Excellency the Minister of Public
Education (communications).

In a private letter—

Его́ Высокопревосходи́тельству Арка́дію Миха́й-
лови́чу Ра́зину.

To his Excellency Arkádi Mikhailovič Rázin.

V. In addressing letters the full titles are inserted, in the dative, with or without къ.

e.g. In a private letter, Его́ Превосходи́тельству
(or Высокопревосходи́тельству) Никола́ю
Семёновичу Пугачёву.

If official, Его́ Высокопревосходи́тельству
Госпо́дну Нача́льнику Либа́во-Ро́менской
же́лзной доро́ги, Никола́ю Семёновичу
Пугачёву.

To his Excellency the director of the Libáva-
Romeny railway. . . .

Where there is no title, any of these three forms are applicable :—

Егó Высокорóдію Николáю Петрóвичу господа́нину Пивова́рову.

Николáю Петрóвичу Пивова́рову.

Or simply, Николáю Петрóвичу господа́нину Пивова́рову.

Next follows the name of the street and number, then the house, lastly the town and country.

e.g. Егó Сіáтельству Князю́ Семёну Аркадіевичу
Долгору́кому,
Мѣховáя ўлица, No. 18,
Домъ Ба́шкина,
въ Москвѣ́.

Letters addressed abroad are marked : за границе́ю, beyond the frontier.

The letter is usually headed with some honorific adjective.

e.g. When very formal, Мі́лостивая Госуда́рыня, Госпожа́ Ша́хматова ; when less stiff, Мі́лостивая Ма́рья Ефі́мовна ; if friendly, Многоуважа́емая Ма́рья Ефі́мовна ; if intimate, Дорога́я or Любе́зная Ма́рья Ефі́мовна.

Thus the English equivalent of Многоуважа́емая Ма́рья Ефі́мовна, would in this case be “Dear Mrs. or Miss Šákhmatov.”

The conclusion of the letter would be as follows :—

Съ соверше́ннымъ почтѣ́ніемъ.

Гото́вый къ услу́гамъ.

(or, informally) Вашъ

Васі́лій Пивова́ровъ.

§ 84. INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES.

As in English, sentences beginning with interrogative pronouns and adverbs are interrogative in themselves.

e.g. **Когда** прибѣдете ?

When will you arrive ?

Other interrogative sentences are distinguished by the enclitic particle **ли**, which is appended to the emphatic word of the sentence. The personal pronoun, or subject, may or may not follow the verb.

e.g. **Не смѣете-ли** вы завтра пригото́вить мой сапо́ги ?
Will you not be able to get my boots ready to-morrow ?

Скоро-ли прибѣдемъ къ бе́регу ?
Shall we soon reach shore ?

There is another interrogative adverb, **развѣ**, which conveys an ironic sense.

e.g. **Развѣ** ну́жно что́бы насъ подслу́шивали ?
Is it necessary they should overhear us ?

§ 85. NEGATIVE SENTENCES.

Russian has two particles of negation, **не** and **ни**. A third one, **нѣтъ**, is considered to be an abbreviation of **не есть**, and is used for "No" as a reply.

ни is used:—

(1) To express neither—nor—.

e.g. **Ни я ни мой отецъ** не могли скрыть такую трево́гу.
Neither I nor my father could conceal such a trouble.

ни ни always requires the verb negatived with **не**.

(2) In composition with negative pronouns [v. § 40 (1), § 41, VII. and § 82, V.]. Such pronouns, e.g. *никако́й*, also need a verb negated with *не*.

(3) With the indefinite pronouns [v. § 82, III.].

не is used:—

(1) To express the negation of a verb in all tenses and moods.

e.g. *Не трогай меня́, когда́ я шью.*

Do not touch me, when I am sewing.

(2) With adjectives to negative their meaning. Notice in this connection that Russian possesses no such distinction of negatives as English or Latin; e.g. between non-essential, unessential, illogical, non-logical, insensate, nonsensical (the distinction generally being that an adjective negated with “un-” or “in-” implies the absence of the positive qualities; whereas the non-compound excludes the compatibility of that quality with some other object).

Such a distinction must be otherwise expressed.

e.g. Your statement is unreasonable.

Твоё объяснѣніе неразу́мно.

Caterpillars are irrational, non-rational beings.

Гусеницы—это безразу́мныя существа́.

Неопредѣ́лennыя зада́чи indefinite, undefined tasks.

Безпредѣ́льныя пространства infinite—endless—horizons.

Observe (as stated in § 41, VII.) that in Russian a double negative asseverates, and does not annul as in English.

e.g. *Я не встрѣча́лъ никого́* I met no one.

An apparent exception exists, when the negatives belong to separate verbs or as stated above.

e.g. Это было встречено, какъ нѣчто такое, что должно было случиться, что не могло не случиться.

This was faced as something that must have come about, that could not not have come about (have failed of coming about).

(3) не, in combination with certain pronouns, forms negative pronouns.*

The pronouns are кто, что, когда, куда, etc. (i.e. those on the first line § 40 (2)).

In this usage не stands for нѣтъ there is not.

e.g. Нечего дѣлать.

There is nothing to do.

(but Я не дѣлалъ ничегó.

I was doing nothing.)

Мнѣ не къ кому обратиться.

I have no one to turn to.

Ему не на чёмъ основывать его надежды.

He has nothing on which to build up hopes.

The preposition is always inserted between the negative and the pronoun, as with никто́, etc.

Observe, in the past or future tense the verb “to be” must be inserted.

e.g. Не чего будетъ (было) дѣлать.

Lastly, the reader is cautioned to distinguish between this use of не, as a separable negative, and нѣ the indefinite prefix; e.g. нѣкто somebody, нѣкоторый, etc. [v. § 40 (2).]

* This use of не, formerly нѣ, is probably derived from не е there is not; е in older Slavonic being an unaccented form of есть.

§ 86. THE VERB "TO BE."

In the present tense the verb "to be" is generally omitted. In any case the forms *есмь, еси, есмы, есте*, are obsolete, and *суть* is only rarely found; *есть*, when necessary, replacing all the persons and numbers.

e.g. *Я здоровъ* I am well.

Ты негодѣй you are a scapegrace.

Онѣ воры they are thieves.

Ба́рина нѣтъ до́ма master is not at home.

However, the "copula" in the present sometimes must be stated.

(1) *Есть* regularly stands for "there is," "there are."

e.g. *Есть на свѣтѣ худыя люди.*

There are evil people in the world.

The negative of *есть* in this sense is *нѣтъ*. [v. § 85.]

(2) *Есть* and *суть* sometimes are used to assert existence.

e.g. *Богъ есть: ангелы суть.*

God *is*: the angels *are*.

But it is better to use the verb *существовать*.

e.g. *Всегда́ существую́тъ нѣсколько́ исклю́че́ній для
всяка́го пра́вила грамма́тики.*

There are always some exceptions to every rule of grammar.

(3) In definitions.

e.g. Прямая́ лінія єсть кратчайшее разстояніе между́ двумя́ точками́.

A straight line is the shortest distance between two points.

Болезни́ суть наказаніе чело́вѣку за перворо́дный грѣхъ.

Diseases are man's punishment for primeval sin.

But, in all such cases it is better to substitute the pronoun *это*.

e.g. Лі́нія — *это* ...

Болезни́ — *это* наказаніе ...

(4) When the use of the copula is essential to clarity *быть* is generally replaced by some exacter verb, such as *сидѣть*, *находиться*, *лежать*, *стоять*, *состоять*.

e.g. Мой дѣ́дя нахо́дится въ плохóмъ состоя́ніи здоро́вія.
My uncle is in poor health.

Москв́а стои́тъ на рѣ́кѣ́ то́го же назва́нія.

Moscow lies (is) on a river of the same name.

Пра́га стои́тъ на холмѣ́ надъ рѣ́кóю Влта́вою.*

Prague is on a hill above the Moldau.

Ко́шка си́дитъ на сту́лѣ.

The cat is on the chair.

Соба́ка лежи́тъ подъ столóмъ.

The dog is under the table.

Сту́лъ стои́тъ въ дѣ́тской.

The chair is in the nursery.

Онъ состои́тъ офице́ромъ въ а́рміи.

He is an officer on service.

The omission in Russian of the present of *быть* explains the form of the past tense. In older Russian the perfect *ран я есмь* (на)писа́хъ, -а, -о, ты еси́ (на)писа́хъ, -а, -о, etc.; later the copula vanished. Cf. in Polish *писа́łem, писа́łam, писа́лом; писа́łeś, писа́łaś, писа́łóś*, etc.; *писа́ли́śmy, писа́лы́śmy*, etc.

* От Мо́лдáвою.

In every other tense and mood the verb **быть** is used, but the predicate put into the dative or instrumental, according to sense.

e.g. Онъ былъ банкиромъ (present онъ банкиръ)
а тепёръ онъ торговецъ селёдками.

He was a banker and is now selling herrings.

Нашёствие Татáръ было несчастьемъ для Рýси.

The incursion of the Tatars was a misfortune to Russia.

Когда бывáете (бýдете) дóма?

When are you at home as a rule?

When will you be at home?

It should, however, be observed that in the present the word **вотъ** is used like the French *voici*, *voilà*, or the Italian *ecco*.

e.g. Вотъ вашъ брaтъ котóрый опоздáлъ.

There is your brother who was late.

§ 87. THE VERB "TO HAVE."

In Russian there is no verb which can be exactly translated "to have."

The verb "to have" is replaced by **у меня есть**, **былъ**, etc.

e.g. У меня [есть] (было or были) три граммáтики
рýсского языка.

I have (had) three grammars of the Russian language.

имѣть "to possess" or "own" is also used in this sense.

e.g. Съ кѣмъ имѣю честь говорить?

With whom have I the honour of speaking?

Otherwise, имѣть means "to own"; cf. иму́щество property.

e.g. У меня́ есть со́бственный до́мъ.

I have a house of my own.

But Имѣю со́бственный до́мъ.

I have (i.e. own as my property) a house belonging to me.

§ 88. SPECIAL USES OF THE INFINITIVE.

The infinitive has a special idiomatic use as a sort of general fatalistic future; the construction is impersonal, the logical subject and the predicate both being put in the dative.

e.g. Имъ не забыть́ своихъ дѣтѣй.

They shall not forget their children.

Та́кимъ о́бразомъ ни́кому не бы́ть бога́ту.

In this fashion no one gets rich. [v. § 34 (1).]

Ну, хоро́шо что ты ко мнѣ заше́лъ; а то не бы́вать тебѣ жи́вому.

It is well for you you came to me; otherwise you would not be alive.

Observe the dative adjective may be in the simple or attributive form; the instrumental is also allowable; thus in the instance above, та́кимъ о́бразомъ . . . бога́тымъ.

The infinitive *may* be used as a noun, as in English.

e.g. To fly on an aeroplane is a great pleasure.

Летѣть на аэроплáнѣ—это большо́е удово́льствіе.*

* Observe aviator is лѣтчикъ.

But the verbal noun in *-nie* is generally substituted in the nominative, and always in the oblique cases.

e.g. To suffer is our truest experience.

Страда́нiе — на́ше са́мое iсти́нное испыта́нiе.

By trying you will succeed.

Стара́нiемъ тебѣ уда́стся.

§ 89. THE USE OF GERUNDIVES AND PARTICIPLES.

I. *The Gerundives.*

The two gerundives, present and past, can only refer to the subject* of the sentence, and are used as indeclinable participles.

e.g. Бродя́ по у́лицѣ, я встрѣ́тилъ Ива́на Я́ков-
ле́вича.

Whilst wandering along the street I met
Iván Yákovleviċ.

Чита́я А́нну Ка́ренину, я пла́кала.

On reading Ánne Karénina, I cried.

Запла́тивъ свои́ долги́, я почу́вствовала себѣ́
свобод́ною.

Having paid my debts I felt free.

II. *The participles, present and past.*

These are used in agreement with a noun.

e.g. Въ ко́мнатѣ́ бы́ло ти́хо, то́лько шелестѣ́ли
перевора́чиваемы́я листь́.

It was quiet in the room, only the leaves (of
the book) rustled as they were turned over
(present participle passive).

* The historical explanation of this rule is that the "gerundives" are the shorter (predicative) form of the nom. sing. masculine of the active participles.

Передъ его́ расш́иренными гла́зами проходили́
стра́шные о́бразы, вызы́вавшие жа́лость . . .

Before his *open* eyes terrifying images passed,
provoking pity . . .

Въ тёмную ночь они́ летѣли куда́-то на свои́хъ
колю́чихъ кры́льяхъ.

In the dark of night they flew somewhere on
their *sharp-pointed* wings.

Всё это́ было проявлéния одной́ зага́дочной
с́илы, жела́ющей погуби́ть чело́вѣка.

All of these were aspects of some one
mysterious power *that wants* to ruin man-
kind.

Я ви́дѣлъ её сиди́щей на сту́лѣ.

I saw her *sitting* in a chair.

Онъ походи́лъ на чело́вѣка теря́ющего послѣд-
нюю наде́жду и оста́вившаго всё въ прош-
ломъ.

He resembled a man *who was losing* his last
hope, and *had left* everything behind in the
past.

Ка́ждый годъ ру́сская желѣзодо́блительная
промышле́нность уменьша́етъ количе́ство
ввози́мыхъ изъ Герма́нии това́ровъ.

Every year the Russian iron industry
diminishes the quantity of goods imported
from Germany.

It should also be observed that the present participle passive, especially when compounded with *he*, has a secondary meaning, corresponding to the Latin *-bilis*.

e.g. **вѣдимый** visible, **двѣжимый** moveable
сгарáемый incendiary, **нелюбѣмый** unlovable

Abstracts from these are formed in **-ость**, etc.

неотъѣмлемость imprescriptibility
неотмѣняемость irrevocability

The past participle passive *may* also bear this same secondary meaning, e.g. **несравнённый** incomparable.

As a general rule these gerundives and participles are used much like the English forms in “-ing.”

§ 90. SUBORDINATE CLAUSES.

I. *Temporal.*

There being no moods in the Russian verb, temporal conjunctions merely govern the same forms as are used in principal clauses.

There are some few independent forms, such as **когда́** when, **пока́** until; most of the conjunctions are compounds with **что**; cf. in French *quand*, but *quoique*, *bienque*, *lorsque*, etc., all formed with *que*.

когда́ means “when” generally; **пока́** is followed by “**не**,” as in French.

e.g. **Пока́ Но́виковъ не уѣзжа́лъ изъ Москвѣ́.**

Until Nóvikov left Moscow, “jusqu’à ce que Novikov ne quittât Moscou.”

But temporal conjunctions are mostly formed with the appropriate preposition governing a case of **тогь**, **то**,

followed by *какъ* or *что* ; e.g. *между тѣмъ какъ* while, *въ то́мъ что* exactly when, *по то́мъ что*, *послѣ то́го какъ* after, *до то́го какъ* until, *отъ то́го что* after which . . .

II. *Causal conjunctions, etc.*

These are all formed prepositionally ; e.g. *потому́ что* because, *для то́го что́бы* with the object of, *кро́мѣ то́го что* besides which, *послѣ то́го какъ* after (causal), *противъ то́го, что* against the fact that . . . , etc., very much like the German “wogegen,” “indem,” “nachdem,” etc.

III. *Conditional clauses.*

The clause prefaced by “if” is called the protasis, the principal sentence is called the apodosis.

The regular method is to prefix the protasis with *если*, in common parlance *ко́ли*.

When the past tenses are used, the particle *бы** *may* be added to the protasis, and must be added to the apodosis. *бы* is enclitic and can be abbreviated to *бъ*, e.g. *еслибъ*.

The apodosis is also frequently prefaced by the particle *то*, which stands first in the sentence, like the German “wenn . . .” “so.” This *то*, like *so*, is left untranslated in English.

* *Бы* in modern Russian is a particle creating the sense of a conditional tense (“I would have,” “should be,” etc.). It is originally the 2nd and 3rd person sing. preterite of *быть* (formerly *я быхъ, ты, онъ бы*). In Old Russian the compound tense *быхъ быхъ* was a regular conditional like *j'aurais été, j'eusse été*.

The tense sequence is as in English.

e.g. Если васъ посѣщѹ, то приведу мою сестру.
If I visit you, I will bring my sister.

Если-бъ случилась такая бѣда, то я увѣдомилъ-
бы васъ объ этомъ.
If such a misfortune happened to me, I would
acquaint you of it.

When the events stated in protasis and apodosis are both unreal, бы is repeated in both.

e.g. Если-бъ я простудился, я не могъ бы окончить
свою книгу.
If I had caught cold, I should not have been
able to finish my book.

The infinitive may be used in either clause as stated in § 88.

e.g. Если бы мнѣ знать.
If I had known.
Если идти направо.
If we are to go to the right, ...

The protasis may be *irregularly* introduced:—

(1) By two disjointed verbs.

e.g. Разбогатѣю, заплачѹ; не разбогатѣю, не заплачѹ.
If I grow rich, I will pay; if I don't, I shan't.

(2) By the imperative uninflected for any person
[v. § 91].

e.g. Знай я это раньше, я бы не написалъ.
Had I known this sooner, I would not have
written.

(3) By the infinitive [cf. § 88].

e.g. Знать бы мнѣ это раньше, я бы не осмѣлился говорить.

Had I known this sooner, I would not have dared speak.

In all these cases бы marks unreality, an unfulfilled condition. Cf. § 93 on было.

IV. Final clauses.

Final clauses relate either to purpose or effect.

(1) Purpose.

Where the subjects of the principal and the subordinate clause are the same, *чтобы* (sometimes *дабы*) is used with the infinitive.

e.g. Я путешествовалъ по Россіи чтобы учиться русскому языку.

I travelled about in Russia to learn Russian.
[v. § 69, V.]

Where the subjects are different, *чтобы* (or *дабы*) generally with the past tense.

e.g. Я уѣду изъ Москвы чтобы ты осталась одна.

I will leave Moscow that you may be left alone.

(2) Effect—"so that," такъ что, with the present, past or future.

e.g. Орёлъ летѣлъ такъ быстро что пельзи было попасть въ него.

The eagle flew so fast that there was no chance of hitting him.

Она такъ раздражительно, что я не выдержу.

She is so irritable that I shall not stand it.

V. *Reported Speech.*

In English reported speech goes into the tense of the principal verb, with the necessary change of person.

e.g. "He said that he was going to visit his cousin if time permitted." The remark in direct narration would be "I am going to visit my cousin, if time permits."

The same rule does not altogether apply to Russian. Russian has only one past tense, so that there is no difference corresponding to "I *have* seen," "I said I *had* seen." Further, there is no reported future tense, "was going to visit," "would visit." Consequently the above sentence in Russian would run: "Онъ сказа́лъ что посѣтитъ своегó двоюроднаго брата́ е́сли у него́ бу́детъ вре́мя" (present tense in reported speech).

Or again, "He said he had seen the Tsar." His remark was "I have seen the Tsar"; however, in Russian, "I saw," "have seen," and "had seen" are all alike, уви́дѣлъ. Consequently the Russian would be: "Онъ сказа́лъ что ви́дѣлъ Царя́."

Lastly, in reporting the present tense, Russian, like English, sometimes may change to the past.

e.g. He said he was writing a letter to his mother
(I am writing . . .).

Онъ сказа́лъ что писа́лъ письмо́ къ ма́тери, *or*
better что пи́шетъ.

Consequently, in reporting an action with a verb in the past, Russian does not, because it cannot, change the tense.

In reporting a speech with a future tense Russian must use the future, as it has no indirect form of expressing the future.

In reporting a speech with a verb in the present, Russian can retain the present, changing the person, *or* may use the past tense.

In reporting an imperative, the imperative must be treated like a future.

e.g. They said they would murder Cæsar (i.e. Let us murder Cæsar).

Онѣ сказали что убьѣють Цэзаря (сказали, да убьѣмъ *or* убьѣмте Цэзаря).

In reporting a question, the same changes of person and tense must be used, but the particle **ли** is affixed to the first word of the subordinate clause, unless some other interrogative word be there instead. [v. § 84.]

e.g. He asked Peter would his (Peter's) sister be going out as a nurse.

He asked Peter when his sister had lost her money.

He asked Peter whether his sister was ailing.

In direct speech—

Will your sister be going out as a nurse?

When did your sister lose her money?

Is your sister ailing?

In Russian—

Онъ спросилъ Петра, пойдѣтъ-ли его сестра въ няньки. [v. § 69, III.]

Онъ спросилъ Петра, когда его сестра потеряла ея деньги.

Онъ спросилъ Петра, не больна-ли его сестра.

In all these cases the only change is in the person, none in the tense.

Similarly—

He said “could one believe a German.”

Онъ сказа́лъ, “ра́звѣ мо́жно вѣ́рить Нѣ́мцу.”

These are the usual methods of reporting speech in Russian. A few idiomatic usages must still be discussed. Three particles, *де*, *мо́лъ* and *де́ска́тъ* (or *ди́ска́тъ*), and in vulgar Russian, *грю*, *гришь*, *гритъ*, *грили* (abbreviations of *говори́ю*), are used like the vulgar English, “’e sez,” to indicate a reported speech; *де*, *мо́лъ*, *ди́ска́тъ* are all three abbreviations of words bearing the same meaning, “he said”; * and are all popular in style.

These particles are used in reporting messages (where in Latin and Greek the accusative and infinitive would be employed).

e.g. Онъ говори́тъ: я мо́лъ иска́лъ, да зна́тъ мо́лъ нѣ́тъ.

He says, “I looked, but could not find out.”

Объ ита́льи́нской а́рміи отзы́вался съ презри́тельной улы́бкой, какъ о вели́чинѣ́ да́же серьё́знаго вни́мани́я не заслу́живающей; мы́-де еѣ хоро́шо зна́емъ. [v. § 4 (7).]

He disparaged the Italian army with a contemptuous smile, as though speaking of a power not deserving serious attention; “we know all about it.”

Вы ду́мали запуга́тъ меня́, Васи́лій Ива́новичъ; во́тъ деска́тъ, я его́ пугну́.

You thought you would frighten me, Vasili Ivánovič; you thought, “I will frighten him.”

* These examples are partly taken from Boyer’s *Manuel de la langue russe*.

In every case where these particles are used, the quotation or indirect narration is in the person and tense of the original; these words merely serve as spoken inverted commas.

§ 91. THE IMPERATIVE.

The imperative conjugated in full comprises the following forms:—

e.g. да играю	пусть играю	let me play
играй		play
да играетъ	пусть играетъ	let him play
да играемъ	пусть играемъ, играйте	let us play
играйте		play
да играютъ	пусть играютъ	let them play

The forms with да express desire; those with пусть permission.

The original imperative has only two forms, играй, играйте, and in Old Russian играй was the correct form of both the 2nd and the 3rd person singular.

The form in и, ѝ, й, ь (e.g. сохни, держи, дѣлай, сядь) is used for all numbers and persons in phrases which have no imperative meaning.

(1) Adverbially.

e.g. пожа́луйста	please (ста suffix)
пожа́луй*	I consent, so be it
ча́й*	(ча́ять expect) so be it
пусть or пуска́й	so be it
кажи́сь	apparently
гляди́	apparently
небо́сь	(for небо́йся do not fear) apparently
поди́	(for пойдѣ from пойдѣти) apparently
почти́	almost

* Probably these are abbreviated forms of пожа́люю, ча́ю.

дай with the perfect future "if I only could."

e.g. Вотъ дай унесу мѣшокъ огурцовъ, продамъ.

If I can carry off this sack of cucumbers, I will sell it.

давай with the infinitive.

e.g. Давай играть. Let us play.

The answer may be давай! Let us! = Yes, please; willingly.

(2) As a preterite.* The form is invariable, and expresses a sudden action.

e.g. Откуда ни возьмись from out of the clouds.
(Literally, from wherever it came.)

Съ горя да съ тоски... я возьмѣ да всё ей
разскажи.

What with pity and grief I told her every-
thing.

Чего-жъ бы я въ домѣ не зналъ? Кажись, всё
знаю.

What do I not know of at home? I think I
know everything.

Поставила на столъ напитки и закуски разныя,
и поутру ранехонько будить и давай рас-
прашивать.

She set various foods and drinks on the
table; wakes up in the morning, and began
asking [literally "and let me ask!"].

So, too, глядь he looked up,—lo! хватъ he seized;
дѣрни, e.g. дѣрни меня the idea occurred to me;
угоразди, e.g. угоразди меня the idea occurred to me.

* This usage is in accord with the older grammar, which had a 3rd person singular preterite in this form.

(3) As a conditional, v. § 90, III. (2).

(4) One past tense, *пошёлъ*, is used as an imperative, equivalent to "get out." The explanation is that the older language had the full form *будь пошёлъ* (*будь* imperative of *быть*).

e.g. *Пошли вонъ, дурачки!*
Out you go, you fools!

§ 92. FURTHER ILLUSTRATIONS OF THE ASPECTS.

Russian has two future forms, perfective and imperfective.

e.g. *Въ бѹдущемъ году бѹду заниматься хѣмѣей.*
Next year I shall study chemistry.
Завтра займѹсь мѹзыкой.
To-morrow I shall be busy with my music.

Remember бѹду and стану can never be used with a perfective infinitive.

The perfective implies definition of object, and completion of purpose; the imperfective the duration or method of the process.

Instances:—

Лѣтомъ онъ ходѣлъ въ пальто (imperfective).
In the summer he walked about in an overcoat.
(French "paletot"; indeclinable in Russian.)

Онъ нерѣдко хаживалъ въ отцовскій домъ.
He often went to his father's house.

(The iterative, expressing discontinuous frequent action.)

Тотъ, кото́рый прохаживается о́коло э́того до́ма
отъ десяти́ часо́въ до полу́дня называ́ется
Никѣ́тинымъ.

The man who saunters round this house from
10 to 12 a.m. is called Nikítin.

Онъ шѣ́лъ въ Москвѣ́ he was going to Moscow.
Онъ пошѣ́лъ на вокза́лъ.

He went to the railway station (perfective
and definitive).

Я ви́дѣ́лъ ви́ды на своѣ́мъ вѣ́кѣ́!
I have seen wonderful things in my life!
(imperfective; general).

Я уви́дѣ́лъ А́нну на ба́шнѣ́.
I caught a sight of Anne on the tower (per-
fective).

Я уви́дѣ́лъ въ гостѣ́нницѣ́ одно́го знако́маго.
I saw an acquaintance in the hotel.
(I.e. I just saw him for an instant; perfective.)

Та́мъ-же ви́дѣ́лъ мно́го ино́странцевъ.
I also saw many foreigners there.
(There is no definiteness in the action.)

It has repeatedly been stated that the "aspects" are best understood as devices for supplementing the defective tense-system, there being in modern Russian no inflections save for the present tense. The following table illustrates this adaptation of the "aspects."

Very few verbs, if any, possess all the aspects; few possess as many as *шепта́ть* or *выдира́ть*. The iterative is in such cases expressed by the present form, and the perfective signifies both the aoristic and a completed action in the past.

A few verbs have an "abstract" and "concrete" aspect; for these, v. §§ 59, I. (4) and 59, II. and III.

SCHEME OF A RUSSIAN VERB WITH FULL ASPECTS
ARRANGED AS TENSES AND MOODS.

Present.

	To tear asunder.	To whisper.
Infinitive :	выдира́ть	шепта́ть
Verbal noun :	выдира́ние	шепта́ние
Part. indecl. act. :	выдира́я	шепча́
Part. decl. active :	выдира́ющий	шепча́щий
Part. passive :	выдира́емый	шепча́емый
Indicative :	выдира́ю, -ешь, -ютъ	шепчу́, шепчутъ
Imperative :	выдира́й	шепчи́

Imperfect.

Indicative :	выдира́лъ	шепта́лъ
Part. indecl. act. :	выдира́въ, -áвши	шепта́въ, -áвши
Part. decl. active :	выдира́вший	шепта́вший

Imperfect iterative.

Indicative :	Same as	шепты́валъ
Part. indecl. act. :	Imperfect	шепты́вавъ, -авши
Part. decl. active :	throughout,	шепты́вавший

Perfect active.

	To tear asunder.	To whisper.
Infinitive :	вы́драть	
Verbal noun :	вы́драніе*	Same as
Part. indeclin. :	вы́дравъ, -авши	Aorist
Part. declinable :	вы́дравши	throughout.
Indicative :	вы́дралъ	
Imperative :	вы́дри	

Perfect.

Part. passive :	{ вы́дранный } { выдира́нный }	ше́птанный
-----------------	-----------------------------------	------------

Aorist.

Infinitive :	вы́дернуть	шепну́ть
Verbal noun :	вы́дернутіе*	шепну́тіе*
Part. indecl. :	вы́дернувъ, -увши	шепну́въ, -у́вши
Part. declinable :	вы́дернувший	шепну́вший
Part. passive :	вы́дернутый	шепну́тый
Imperative :	вы́дери	шепни́

Future.

Continuous :	бу́ду вы́дирать	бу́ду шепта́ть
Iterative :	„ „	бу́ду шёптывать*
Perfective :	вы́дру, -ёшь, -у́ть	Same as Aoristic.
Aoristic :	вы́дерну, -ешь, -у́ть	шепну́, -ёшь, -у́ть

Conditionals can be formed from any *past tense* by adding the particle бы.

* Seldom used.

§ 93. AUXILIARY PARTICLES.

The Russian verb has only one past tense, and one present. It has been explained how the aspects supplement the tense system, the imperfective supplying an imperfect tense [v. § 42 (2) (i) and (ii), § 59, § 90, III., and § 92]; the perfective a past tense of completion, whether preterite perfect or pluperfect, and a determinate future; the iterative a tense to express frequency of action; and the abstract aspect the power as contrasted with the act. Further, the particle *бы* partially replaces the subjunctive mood.

There are other particles and auxiliaries used, e.g. *пусть, да, дай, давай* [v. § 91], principally with the imperative; and the use of some others, e.g. *давно́, было, бывало, стану, буду, будто, только, что*, is important.

(1) *давно́* (*да́вный* in the past) or *уже́* (already) is used to express the pluperfect.

e.g. *Онъ давно́ иска́лъ дочку.*

He had long been searching for his daughter (imperfective).

Ты уже́ пригото́вилъ о́бѣдъ.

You had prepared dinner (perfective).

(2) *бѹду*, as has been seen [§ 92], expresses the imperfective future [also v. § 58].

(3) *стану* also expresses the imperfective future, but has a remoter meaning, like the English "I am going to . . ." or the French "*je vais . . .*"

e.g. *Стану́ соби́рать мои́ вещи́ въ чемоданъ.*

I am going to pack my things in the portmanteau.

(4) *бѹдто* or *какъ бѹдто* means “as though.”

e.g. Онъ всталъ какъ бѹдто чтóбы уходѣть.

He got up as though he were going out.

Онъ улыбу́лся какъ бѹдто егó братъ пошутѣлъ.

He smiled as though his brother had made a
joke

(5) *то́лько что* means “just.”

e.g. Онъ то́лько что похоро́нилъ своегó отца́ какъ
померла́ и мать.

He had just buried his father, when his
mother died.

(6) *быва́ло* with the past tense adds a meaning of
“he used to do,” of a continuous practice.

e.g. Я быва́ло посѣща́лъ эту семью.

I used to visit this family.

(7) *хотѣ́* (or *хоть*) is used for “though”; in combination with *бы* and a past tense, *бѣ* when the sense imports unreality.

e.g. Хотѣ́ ты быль х́уденькѣй, на́до было постара́ться.
Though you were ill, you should have tried.

Хотѣ́ я бѹ́ду въ Москвѣ́, по миѣ́ нельзя́ бѹ́детъ
повида́ть ва́шихъ роди́телей.

Though I shall be at Moscow, I shall not be
able to see your parents.

Хотѣ́-бѣ́ я быль са́мымъ си́льнѣ́йшимъ на свѣ́тѣ́,
бѣ́дныхъ я-бѣ́ не угнетáлъ.

Even if I were the most powerful man on
earth, I would not oppress the poor.

(8) *было* with the imperfective or perfective past signifies that the action contemplated, in the clause into which *было* is inserted, was never completed: as something—in the following sentence—intervened.

e.g. Я дѣлалъ было приготовленія что́бы пригласить васъ къ себѣ въ гости, когда меня вызвали изъ Лондона.

I was getting ready to ask you to a party, but was summoned away from London.

Я дочиталъ ваше сочиненіе и уложилъ было для почты, когда непріятели сожгли мой домъ.

I had finished reading your composition, and had packed it up to post, but the enemy burned my house.

(9) The future perfect (I shall have . . .) cannot be expressed in Russian by any one corresponding tense.

e.g. Когда я буду вполне удовлетворёнъ, меня уже не будетъ у живыхъ.

When I shall have been satisfied completely, I shall no longer be alive.

Я побѣгú домой и буду назадъ, прежде чѣмъ ты встанешь.

I shall have run home and back, before you even get up.

§ 94. THE IMPERSONAL CONSTRUCTION.

I. Many verbs are in themselves impersonal; e.g. *кажется* it seems, *оказывается* it transpires.*

* *Казаться* to seem, *оказаться* to render, *сказать* tell, *приказать* order, *разсказать* narrate, *указать* indicate, *показать* show, *отказать* dismiss, refuse; all of them perfective, the imperfectives being *оказывать*, etc

Such verbs are used only in the 3rd person singular, as in Latin or Greek without *any* pronoun.

II. There is no one word for generality like “one,” “man,” “*on*”; either the 2nd person singular, or the 3rd person plural is used.

e.g. Говорѣтъ one says.

Чѣмъ болѣе стараешься, тѣмъ болѣе ошибаешься.

The more one tries, the more mistakes one makes.

III. Russian has a predilection for impersonal construction in the passive with *ся* [v. § 60], the agent or subject being put into the dative.

e.g. хочú I wish, or мнѣ хочется; видѣтъ I saw, мнѣ видѣлось; спать to sleep, мнѣ спалось хорошó I slept soundly; дúмаю I think, мнѣ дúмается I think; жить to live, въ Англіи свободно проживáется life is free in England.

As a rule the reflexive passive construction imports a remoteness or generality to the sentence, whereas the active records a precise and determinate fact.

§ 95. АПОСОПАТΕD FORMS OF SOME VERBS.

A few verbs signifying a brusque action or noise have an *invariable* form for the past tense.*

E.g. the interjections ахъ! охъ! ухъ! эхъ! are sometimes used like parts of a verb, meaning “to cry out” ахъ, эхъ, etc.

* In many cases very similar to the apocopated past of imperfectives in -нуть [v. § 50, II.], and the imperative preterites [v. § 91].

So, too, the past of inchoatives in -нуть; e.g. прыгъ jumped, стукъ knocked, and similarly бухъ bump.

e.g. Бухъ — поплыли въ водахъ глубокихъ.

Plump — they swam in the deep waters.

Онѣ подошли къ дому и стукъ въ окно.

They approached the house and rat-ta-tap-tap on the window.

Лиса пустилась къ лѣсу и юркъ въ нору.

The fox started for the wood, and dashed into a hole.

§ 96. THE REFLEXIVE VERBS.

Under this head a few special phrases may be discussed. It has already been stated [§ 60] what the distinction is between passives and reflexives.

e.g. Этой войной разрушились всѣ ходячія литературныя представленія.

In this war all the current literary notions were destroyed.

Уничтожали самихъ себя оба противника (or уничтожили, perfective).

Both combatants annihilated themselves.

Where an action is done for someone at his orders French uses the exact phrase “faire . . .”; English leaves it to be understood; the Russian usage will be illustrated by the example.

e.g. The workmen built a house.

L'ouvrier bâtit une maison.

Рабочій построилъ домъ.

But I have built a country-house.

Je me suis fait bâtir une maison de campagne.

Я построилъ себѣ усадьбу.

Женá обѹлась.

The woman has put her shoes on.

Elle s'est chaussée, *or* elle s'est fait chausser.

Я побрѣюсь.

I will shave [myself] or be shaved.

Я брѣюсь самъ.

I shave *myself*.

Many verbs are reflexive in Russian, where they would not be so in English.

In the first place the reflexive indicates that the object is identical with the subject.

e.g. мы́ться to wash (oneself), обувáться to put on shoes, etc., одѣвáться to dress (oneself), etc.

In the second place [v. § 60] it indicates the passive (as in French).

e.g. Свирѣпости продолжáются.

Les barbaries se continuent (are being continued).

Я лиши́лся ма́тери.

I have lost my father.

Онъ лиши́лся жи́зни.

He has died.

Онъ лиши́лъ себя́ жи́зни.

He has committed suicide.

In the third place many verbs are naturally reflexive or deponent.

e.g. горди́ться чѣмъ to boast

бои́ться чего to fear

Fourthly, many verbs with the reflexive import what was in Greek the middle voice, i.e. an action directed to the purpose of or affecting the subject of the verb, though the object governed be not the subject of the sentence.

e.g. Онъ стучѣтъ въ дверь.

He is knocking at the door.

Онъ стучится въ дверь.

He is knocking at the door (with some expectation concerning himself).

Волосы старца (or у старца) бѣлѣютъ.

An old man's hair goes white.

Снѣжныя вершины горъ бѣлѣются въ отдаленіи.

The snow-peaks of the mountain are whitening in the distance.

Слѣшать to hear.

Слѣшаться obey.

Мухи кусаютъ.

Flies sting [bite].

Моя кошка кусается.

My cat bites (as her habit).

Признавать to acknowledge.

Признаваться to admit, confess.

Я призналъ его правымъ.

I acknowledged him to be right.

Я признался, что я не былъ совсѣмъ безвѣннымъ.

I confessed I was not altogether guiltless.

§ 97. RUSSIAN RELATIONSHIPS.

In the matter of words descriptive of relationships, Russian has an extraordinary abundance of special words.

Kinship is родствó.

Degrees of relationship стéпени родствá :—

General terms об́щія назв́анія.

прéдокъ прéдки	ancestors
потóмки	descendants
рóдственникъ	kinsman
рóдственница	kinswoman
родъ (рóда)	family (genealogically)
семья́ (фамíлія)	a family

Special designations особ́ыя назв́анія :—

Lineal descent поколѣ́нiе нисходя́щее.

сынъ	son	} поколѣ́нiя по прямой ли́нiи generations in the direct line
дочь	daughter	
дѣти	children	
внукъ	grandson	
вну́чка	granddaughter	
внучата	grandchildren [v. § 26 (5)]	
пра́внукъ, etc.	great grandson	

Lineal ascent поколѣ́нiе восходя́щее.

оте́ць *	father
мать	mother
роді́тели	parents
дѣ́дъ	grandfather
ба́бушка (ба́бка)	grandmother
пра́дѣдъ	great grandfather
пра́бабушка	great grandmother
прапра́дѣдъ, etc.	great great grandfather
пра́щуръ	great great great grandfather

* Батьюшка in familiar speech.

Collateral relations побóчное родствó.

братъ *	brother
сестра́	sister
дѣдя	uncle
тѣтя, тѣтка	aunt
† стрѣй	uncle, paternal
† стрѣя	aunt, paternal
† уй	uncle, maternal
† уйка	aunt, maternal
† уецъ, уйчичъ, -ечка	first cousin on father's side
† стрѣйчичъ, -ечка	first cousin, maternal side
племянникъ, -ица	nephew, niece
братаничъ, ‡ -ица	nephew, niece, by brother
сестричъ, ‡ -ица	nephew, niece, by sister
двоу́родный братъ (сестра́)	first cousin §
троу́родный братъ	second cousin, and so on
двоу́родный племян- никъ	first cousin once removed in second generation downwards

Similarly—

троу́родная ба́бушка	great aunt
троу́родный дѣдъ	great uncle

These words for relationship are, however, seldom used beyond the third generation; in ordinary language a third cousin would be ро́дственникъ въ четвёртомъ ко́лѣнѣ, a kinsman in the fourth generation.

* Used colloquially to express friendly connection.

† All of these are obsolete or nearly so.

‡ Disused now.

§ I.e. a brother in the second generation.

Relations by marriage родствó по бра́ку (свойствó*).

	<i>From the husband's side.</i>	<i>From the wife's side.</i>
Father-in-law	тесть	свёкорь
Mother-in-law	тёща	свекрóвь
Brother-in-law	шúринь <i>or</i> зять	дёверь
	[v. § 24 (2)]	
Sister-in-law	сво́йченица, <i>or</i> свесть, <i>or</i> невёстка	золóвка
Son-in-law	зять	зять
Daughter-in-law	сноха́ <i>or</i> невёстка	сно́ха <i>or</i> невёстка
Sister-in-law's husband	сво́йкъ	золóвкинъ мужъ
Wife of brother-in-law	ятровъ†	ятровъ†

I.e. my sister's husband is зять; my brother's wife невёстка; but my wife's sister is свесть *or* сво́йченица, and her husband сво́йкъ; my husband's sister золóвка. In English "brother-in-law," "sister-in-law," leave all these relationships indeterminate.

Other terms to be noted are:—

óтчимъ	step-father
ма́чеха	step-mother
па́сынокъ	step-son
па́дчерица	step-daughter
сво́дный братъ	step-brother
сво́дная сестра́	step-sister

* But сво́йство property.

† Obsolete.

крѣстный отецъ	godfather
крѣстная мать	godmother
крѣстникъ (крѣстный сынъ)	godson
крѣстница (крѣстная дочь)	goddaughter
невѣста	bride
женѣхъ	bridegroom
женáтый	married (of a man)
замúжня	married (of a woman)
бракъ	marriage
свадьба	wedding

Note.—мужъ женѣтся на женú, *but* женá выйдётъ замужъ на когó.

Онъ выдалъ Áнну замужъ на Пльó.

He gave Anne in marriage to Плу́.

Моя сестра́ замужемъ.

My sister is married.

Замúжество, замúжество marriage (of a woman).

Женѣтьба marriage (of a man).

Relations of the half-blood are said to be *единокрóв-ный* ; e.g. мой братъ *единокрóвный* my half-brother, and are further distinguished as *братъ по мáтери*, *сестра́ по отцú*, etc.

TABLE OF KINSHIP (Таблица Родственниковъ).

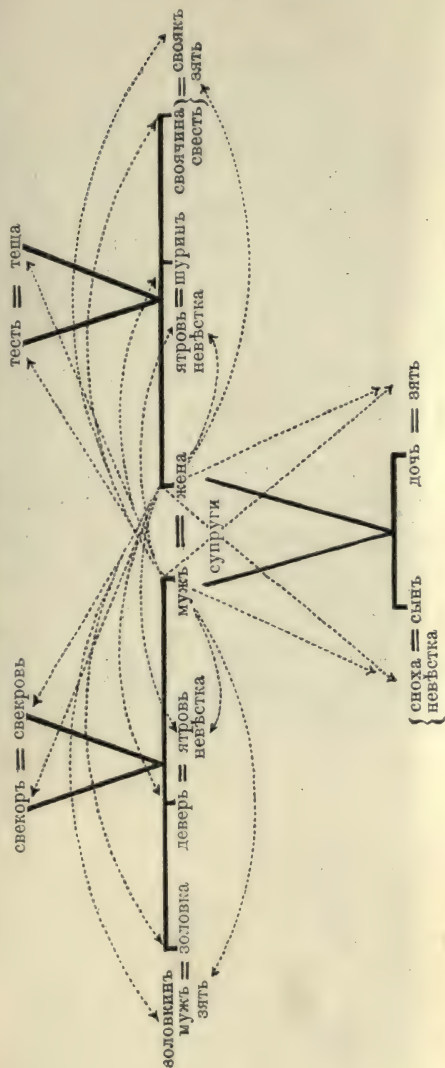
Колѣна.
Generations.

Предки—Ancestors.					Потомки—Descendants.				
пращуръ ... 5	...	...	...	...	пращуръ ... 5	...	...	...	...
пятиродный прапрадѣдъ ... 4	...	...	...	...	прапрадѣдъ ... 4	...	...	...	...
5 род. прадѣдъ ... 3	...	...	...	...	прадѣдъ ... 3	...	...	...	...
5 род. дѣдъ ... 2	...	...	...	...	дѣдъ ... 2	...	...	...	...
5 род. дядя ... 1	...	...	...	...	дѣдъ ... 2	...	...	...	...
5 род. братъ ... 2 род.	...	...	...	...	мать ... 1	...	...	...	...
5 род. племя ... 2 род.	...	...	...	...	двоюрод. сестра ... 1	...	...	...	...
5 род. внукъ ... 2 род.	...	...	...	...	племя ... 2 род.	...	...	...	...
5 род. правн. ... 2 род.	...	...	...	...	племя ... 2 род.	...	...	...	...
5 род. праправн. ... 2 род.	...	...	...	...	племя ... 2 род.	...	...	...	...

E.g. My fourth cousin (fem.) once removed (in older generation) мой пятёродная тётка.
 My third cousin twice removed (in younger generation) мой четырёхродный внукъ.

TABLE OF AFFINITIES (Таблица Свойственниковъ).

Родители по браку или по свойству.



2

2

Е.г. Женатые на двухъ сестёръ называются между собою свояки. Жёны двухъ братьевъ между собою ятрови. Золовка это мужнина сестра. Шурьями называются жёны братья.

Зять имѣеть двойное значеніе; онъ или сестринъ, или дочеринъ мужъ; такимъ-же образомъ невестка есть, или братнина жена или сынѡвья.

ETYMOLOGY.

Under this head a list of formatives of nouns, verbs, and adjectives is inserted in alphabetical order. Except for those few whose accentuation is fixed, i.e. either absolutely atonic, or else always stressed, and subject to special rules stated in the body of the grammar, the rule is that *these terminations are accented, whenever the primary form is capable of throwing its accent forward in any inflection* (e.g. столъ, столá and столáрь; but об́щій, об́ще, об́щество; товáрищъ, товáрищество); they are *unaccented, if the primary form has a fixed accent on its stem*. Thus, тоо, царь, царя́, царя́ца; but нача́льникъ, нача́льника, нача́льница; рабóта, рабóтникъ, рабóтать, etc.

Some of the terminations are now “dead,” i.e. disused, except in survivals. When this is so, a special remark is made to this effect.

The letter ь will be found prefixed to many. This indicates that in composition the previous sounds, vowels or consonants, must be modified. [v. § 5.]

§ 98. THE NOUNS.

I. Foreign terminations in common use. These are few in number and easily learnt.

-’ція, in foreign words, = “-tion”; e.g. áкція share, на́ція nation, пози́ція position. Always accented as shown.

-ёръ, i.e. the French “-aire” in foreign words; e.g. акціо́нёръ. The plural is in -ы.

- ёръ, i.e. the French “-eur” in foreign words;
e.g. актёръ. The plural is in -ы.
- измъ = English “-ism.” This suffix is mostly
accented.
- истъ = English “-ist,” used in foreign words;
e.g. артистъ artist.
- логія = English “-logy” in foreign words; e.g.
физиологія physiology. Accented as shown.
- торъ, -соръ, in foreign words; the Latin “tor”;
e.g. авторъ author, профессоръ professor. The
termination is unaccented; the plural in а
or ы.

II. Disused or dead suffixes.

- ба (dead). Nouns denoting action, mostly
derived from nouns; e.g. свадьба wedding
(свагъ), дружба friendship (другъ), судьба
judgment (судъ). These words are mostly
paroxytone.
- ва unaccented (dead). Nouns denoting action of
verbs; e.g. бритва razor, клятва oath. These
words are generally paroxytone, unless derived
from verbs.
- мя (мени) neuter (dead). Suffix of a number of
nouns such as имя name, пламя flame. Corre-
sponds to Latin “-men,” always dissyllabic
and paroxytone. [v. § 21.]
- уль (dead). A termination found in a few Tatar
words; e.g. есауль captain, карауль sentry.
- ья accented, masc. second declension (dead).
Names of agents; e.g. судья judge.

III. Patronymics.

-ичъ, in patronymics ; feminine -ична. [v. § 83, I.]

-овичъ, -евичъ, in patronymics ; feminine -овна, -евна. [v. § 83, I.]

-овъ, -евъ, in patronymics ; feminine -ова, -ева. [v. § 83, I.]

IV. Termination to denote the female.

-а ; e.g. раба́ (рабъ) slave.

-ева ; e.g. коро́ль king, королева́.

-ица, forming feminines and nouns from verbs ;
e.g. ви́сѣлица gallows, племя́нница niece.

-ша (never accented), denotes the wife of an official ;
e.g. фельдфе́рша the wife of a state messenger,
до́кторша the doctor's wife.

-ыня, -иня, feminine formation ; e.g. геро́иня heroine,
княги́ня countess, боги́ня goddess,
суда́рыня, ба́рыня mistress.

V. Abstract nouns.

-знь fem. (dead), forms abstracts ; e.g. бо́лѣзнь illness.

-изна (dead), forms abstracts ; e.g. отчѣ́зна fatherland,
новизна́ novelty.

-ина, abstracts from adjectives ; e.g. глуби́на depth,
годи́на time.

-ѣвѣ, -иня, forms abstracts from adjectives ; e.g. горди́ня pride.

-ie (unaccented), forms abstracts from adjectives ;
e.g. весё́лье mirth.

-ость, -есть (never accented), forms abstract nouns
of the third declension from adjectives,
and retains accent of the adjective, unless it
is oxytone ; e.g. ско́рость, ско́рый quick ;
дви́жимость, дви́жимый moveable ; на́гость,
наго́й naked ; све́жесть, све́жий freshness.

-та́ forms abstract nouns from adjectives ; e.g.
быстро́та speed, красо́та beauty. Almost
always accented as shown.

-щина (never accented), forms abstract nouns from
nouns, descriptive of a state of affairs ;
e.g. Обло́мовщина Oblómovism (Oblómov, the
hero of a novel by Гонча́ров) ; пугачёвщина,
the state of rebellion induced by the rebel
Пу́гачёв ; Толсто́вщина, Tolstoyan life.

-ство forms abstracts from adjectives and nouns.
One of the commonest terminations ; e.g.
лѣка́рство medicine, това́рищество society,
воровствó thieving.

VI. Verbal nouns.

-и́ровка forms nouns of action from verbs in
-и́ровать ; e.g. группиро́вка the grouping,
марши́ровка the marching. Always thus
accented.

-ние (seldom accented), forming verbal nouns.
[v. § 42 (2) (i).] Note, however, -нѣ́ (вра́нѣ́,
дра́нѣ́).

-tie (very seldom accented), verbal noun. [v. § 49, II.]

VII. The agent or implement.

-акъ, -якъ, an agent ; e.g. батра́къ workman, вожа́къ a leader. The accent is thrown forward in all the terminations. Always oxytone. [cf. § 25, I.]

-аръ, -яръ, an agent, derives nouns from nouns ; e.g. столя́ръ joiner, боча́ръ cooper. The plural is in -а́.

-аръ, an agent ; e.g. зна́харъ magician, понама́ръ sexton.

-ецъ, agent or implement ; e.g. при́имецъ a receiver, ва́лецъ a roller, бо́рець a wrestler.

-икъ, an agent. The nominative is accented according to the noun from which the word is derived, when the word is oxytone the accent is thrown forward in the oblique cases ; e.g. алхи́микъ alchemist, разска́зчикъ narrator, ямщи́къ coachman.

-ка (unaccented), an implement ; e.g. винто́вка a rifle, во́зка carrying.

-никъ, an agent, derived from adjectives and nouns, *v.* -икъ ; e.g. алты́нникъ a miser, бары́шникъ a jobber, возни́къ a draught horse. Feminine -ница. When -и́къ is accented it throws the accent forward on to all the terminations.

-тель, an agent, forms nouns from verbs ; e.g. учи́тель teacher, писа́тель writer. The termination is never accented, the accentuation follows the infinitive. Sometimes the words have a secondary meaning, e.g. указáтель index.

-у́нь fem., -у́нья (accented), depreciatory, agent from a verb; e.g. болту́нь, -у́нья chatterbox, бѣгу́нь runaway.

-чикъ, -щикъ, an agent; e.g. буфѣтчикъ a butler, ямщи́къ a coachman, ва́льщикъ a paper-hanger.

VIII. Diminutives.*

(1) Masculine nouns of first declension.

-ёкъ, -екъ, diminutive suffix for masculines; e.g. кружо́къ circle, кругъ.

-я (never accented), forms diminutives of proper names; e.g. Пѣтя (Петръ), Ко́ля (Никола́й), Серёжа (Серге́й).

-о́чекъ, -и́чекъ, diminutive denoting affection for masculine nouns; e.g. дружо́чекъ (другъ), кружо́чекъ (кругъ).

-и́шко (masc. gen. -и́шка, etc.), and -и́шка, feminine (always thus accented), forms depreciatory diminutives from masculine nouns; e.g. сели́шко (село́), вори́шка (воръ thief, pick-pocket).

(2) Neuter nouns of first declension.

-ько (seldom accented), forms diminutive of neuter nouns; e.g. крыльцо́, крыле́чко; *but* очко́.

-ьце, diminutive; e.g. зе́ркальце mirror.

* In Russian the use of diminutives and augmentatives is very common, the subtleties of meaning are difficult of translation into English, and can only be gathered by practice. It is important for the student to recognise the forms.

-ечко, -ышко, -ушко (never accented), forms diminutives of affection from neuter nouns ; e.g. со́лышко (солнце), гнё́здышко.

-ы́шко, -и́шко, neut., and -ы́шка, -и́шка, feminine, (always accented), forms depreciatory diminutives from nouns ; e.g. се́лышко nasty little village, ко́роты́шка pigmy, зе́млі́шка barren piece of ground, го́роді́шко ugly little town.

(3) Feminines (and masculines) of the second declension.

-ька (unaccented), diminutive of feminines ; e.g. жё́нка little woman ; кнѣ́жка little book. This same termination forms diminutives of proper names ; e.g. Са́шка (Алекса́ндръ), Се́рёжка (Се́ргѣй).

-енька (never accented), forms diminutives of affection from the second declension ; e.g. ду́шенька (душа́) little soul, darling.

-и́ца, -и́чка, forms diminutives of affection from feminine nouns ; e.g. се́стри́ца.

-очка, -ечка (never accented), forms diminutives of affection from second declension ; e.g. скаме́ечка little stool, ка́рточка visiting card.

-ушка, -юшка (never accented), forms diminutives of affection from nouns of second declension ; e.g. ма́тушка (ма́ть) mother, ба́тюшка (ба́тя) father.

-ёнка (always accented), forms depreciatory diminutives; e.g. лоша́дка nasty little horse, ко́ровёнка nasty little cow.

-ýша, -ю́ша, -ýшка, -ю́шка (always accented), forms diminutives of depreciation from nouns of the second declension; e.g. Катю́ша from Ка́тя Katy, Аксё́ша (from Акси́ня).

IX. Augmentatives.

-ище (masc. and neuter), -ища (feminine), forms augmentatives from nouns; e.g. доми́ще a big house (masc.); ду́рища a great fool (feminine); полотни́ще a big piece of cloth.

In some nouns there is no augmentative sense; e.g. жили́ще abode, кладби́ще cemetery (generally accented on the first syllable), учи́лище a school. When -ище is not an augmentative it is, as a rule, unaccented.

-ино, -ина, forms augmentatives from nouns, generally depreciatory; e.g. доми́на a very big house.

X. Miscellaneous.

-анинъ, -янинъ, mostly used to denote members of nations, religions, etc. [v. § 24 (5).] Accented either oxytone or paroxytone.

-а́чь, forms descriptive nouns; e.g. борода́чь a long beard, бога́чь a rich man.

-е́жь (accented, disused), forms nouns from verbs; e.g. паде́жь case (пада́ть), грабе́жь plunder (гра́бить); in the oblique cases падежа́, etc.

-ёнокъ, plural -ята, the young of animals;
e.g. волчѣнокъ, волчáта wolf; галчѣнокъ jack-
daw; but щенóкъ, щенáта puppy; волчóкъ
wolf's cub. [v. § 26 (5).]

-ло, from verbs; noun describes action of verb
and follows accent of the past tense in лъ;
e.g. начáло beginning, одѣ́ло blanket, вѣ́ло
winnowing-fan, ва́ло chisel.

§ 99. ADJECTIVAL SUFFIXES.

-авый (dead); e.g. лука́вый sly, велича́вый stately.
Accented on termination -áv.

-ва́тый, a termination mainly used with adjectives
denoting substance, generally accented -ва́тый;
e.g. аляповáтый clumsy, виновáтый guilty,
впитева́тый eloquent.

-ова́тый, -ева́тый, added to adjectives, often has
the sense of "-ish"; e.g. синева́тый bluish,
бѣлова́тый whitish. Always thus accented.

-ви́тый, descriptive adjective (from nouns); e.g.
гранови́тый faceted, дарови́тый talented.

-и́кий, adjectival suffix; e.g. вели́кий big.

-истый, from nouns, "resemblance"; e.g. золоти́стый
gold-coloured, гли́нистый clayey.

-и́ческий forms adjectives mostly from words
derived from Greek; e.g. ари́метиче́ский
arithmetical, практи́ческий practical. Accented
as shown.

- ий (unaccented), forms possessive adjectives ; e.g. ворóний a crow's. [v. § 35.]
- ливый forms adjectives from nouns ; e.g. счáсливъ happy, стыдлѣвый shamefast.
- мый, present passive participle, equivalent to "-ble." [v. § 89, II.]
- ов-, -ев-, one of the commonest ways of forming adjectives of all sorts ; e.g. боковóй lateral, Петróвъ of Peter, Алексѣвъ of Alexis, верховóй upper, тѣсовый of yew, вѣковóй age-long.
- óкий adjectival ending, -окъ substantive ; e.g. глубóкий deep, знатóкъ an expert, зрачóкъ pupil of eye.
- онький, -енький, forms adjectives with diminutive meaning ; e.g. малéнький very small, плóхонький unwell, тѣхонький silent.
- учій, -ячій, former pres. part. act., now adjectival ; e.g. могúчій powerful, горячій hot, зыбúчій vacillating. [v. § 44.]
- чатый, forming descriptive adjectives ; e.g. колѣнчатый knotted, зубчáтый notched. Accentuation follows that of principal noun.
- чивъ, forming adjectives ; e.g. задúмчивый thoughtful, говорчивый talkative. The termination is unaccented.
- шний, adjectival from nouns ; e.g. домáшний domestic, вчерáшний yesterday's, тепéрешний of the present time.

-лскій, -лской, forms adjectives of all sorts. There is no shortened predicative form. The accentuation is that of the noun from which the adjective is derived.

A few words accent -лской; e.g. мужской male, людской public, городской civic.

-ьный, -ьной, one of the commonest ways of forming adjectives of all sorts; e.g. больной ill, государственный of the State, важный important.

-инъ, forms possessive adjectives in the second declension; e.g. дѣдинъ the uncle's. [v. § 34 (2).]

-ѣйшій, -айшій, -ѣе, comparatives. [v. § 37.]

-янный, -яной, adjectives of substance; e.g. водяной watery, деревянный wooden, масляный buttery.

§ 100. VERBAL FORMATIONS.

-ировать (third conjugation), used mainly in foreign words; e.g. атрофировать to atrophy. [v. § 53 (3).]

-ить (fourth conjugation), forms transitive verbs; e.g. старить to make old, бѣсить to drive frantic. [v. § 59, V.]

-нуть, verbs of second conjugation. [v. § 50.]

-ывать, -ивать, iterative verbs. [v. § 59, I. (4).]

-ѣть (third conjugation), inceptive verbs; e.g. алѣть to grow red, краснѣть to blush. [v. § 53 (2).]

With roots ending in ч, ш, щ, the termination is -ать, v. § 55, II.

LONDON :

PRINTED BY WILLIAM CLOWES AND SONS, LIMITED,
DUKE STREET, STAMFORD STREET, S.E., AND GREAT WINDMILL STREET, W.

①

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY

This book is DUE on the last date stamped below.

Five cents on first day overdue

Ten cents on fourth day overdue

One dollar on seventh day overdue

OV 6 1947

25 Apr '50 CA

27 Apr '51 LU

14 Jan '54 SC

9 Oct '55 BC

SEP 25 1955 LU

JUN 22 1956 LU

25 Feb '58 JN

REC'D LD

JUN 19 1958

FEB 25 1958

25 Jul 58 BF

5 Apr '55 MC

JUN 14 1955 LU

3 Nov '55 KC

IN STACKS

JUL 11 1958

REC'D LD

JUL 29 1958

26 Oct '58 PY

REC'D LD

OCT 14 1958

13 Jul '59 MW

REC'D LD

JUL 6 1959

8 Apr '60 BT

REC'D LD

MAY 22 1959

DISCIRC FEB 08 '94

yB 60312

U. C. BERKELEY LIBRARIES



C043104725

344623 835

M199

THE UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY

10.5

23.4
25 2
1872
280

